Interpretation

上海紧缺人才培训工程教学系列丛书

英语口译基础能力证书考试

基础口译教程

A Preliminary Course of Interpretation

主　编　齐伟钧　孙万彪
副主编　罗杏焕　吴建国

口译

上海外语教育出版社
外教社 SHANGHAI FOREIGN LANGUAGE EDUCATION PRESS
www.sflep.com

责任编辑　陶　怡
封面设计　王中维
版式设计　张惠忠

外教社口译类图书

新编英语口译教程

新编英语口译教程(学生用书，配带 5 盒)　厦门大学
新编英语口译教程(教师用书，配带 3 盒)　厦门大学

中高级口译资格证书考试系列教材

英语高级口译资格证书考试

高级翻译教程(第三版)　孙万彪　王恩铭
高级口译教程(第三版)　梅德明
高级听力教程(第三版)　周国强
高级口语教程(第三版)　严诚忠　戚元方
高级阅读教程(第三版)　陈德民
应试指南(配带 3 盒)　齐伟钧　陈汉生
上海市英语高级口译岗位资格证书考试大纲(2006 年版)　上海市高校浦东继续教育中心
上海市外语口译岗位资格证书考试委员会

英语中级口译资格证书考试

中级翻译教程(第三版)　孙万彪
中级口译教程(第三版)　梅德明
中级听力教程(第三版)　周国强
中级口语教程(第三版)　严诚忠　戚元方
中级阅读教程(第三版)　陈汉生
上海市英语中级口译岗位资格证书考试大纲(2008 年版)　上海市高校浦东继续教育中心
上海市外语口译岗位资格证书考试委员会

英语中级口译资格证书考试自学辅导系列

中级翻译教程(第二版)应试指导　孙信伟　孙万彪
中级口译教程(第二版)应试指导　梅德明
中级听力教程(第二版)应试指导　周国强等
中级口语教程(第二版)应试指导　严诚忠　朱妙南
中级阅读教程(第二版)应试指导　陈汉生

ISBN 978-7-5446-2260-8
9 787544 622608 >
定价：14.00 元

外教社教材

基础口译教程

A Preliminary Course of Interpretation

主　　编　齐伟钧　孙万彪

副 主 编　罗杏焕　吴建国

本册编写　罗杏焕　吴建国

贾　丹　曹　磊

赵　蓉　华汀汀

上海外语教育出版社

外教社 SHANGHAI FOREIGN LANGUAGE EDUCATION PRESS

图书在版编目（CIP）数据

基础口译教程／齐伟钧，孙万彪主编．
一上海：上海外语教育出版社，2011
（上海紧缺人才培训工程教学系列丛书）
ISBN 978-7-5446-2260-8
Ⅰ.①基… Ⅱ.①齐… ②孙… Ⅲ.①英语－口译－资格考试－教材 Ⅳ.①H319.9

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字（2011）第038336号

出版发行：上海外语教育出版社
（上海外国语大学内） 邮编：200083
电　　话：021-65425300（总机）
电子邮箱：bookinfo@sflep.com.cn
网　　址：http://www.sflep.com.cn　　http://www.sflep.com
责任编辑：陶　怡

印　　刷：上海中华印刷有限公司
开　　本：890×1240　1/32　印张 7.875　字数 242千字
版　　次：2011年7月第1版　2011年7月第1次印刷
印　　数：10 000册

书　　号：ISBN 978-7-5446-2260-8 / G・0804
定　　价：14.00元

前 言

“上海市英语口译基础能力证书”是经上海市紧缺人才培训工程联席会议办公室审核、确认的上海市英语口译岗位资格证书配套培训和考试项目之一。通过该项目市统考者可获得上海市委组织部、上海市人事局、上海市教育委员会、上海市成人教育委员会统一印制的“上海市英语口译基础能力证书”。

英语口译基础是通向英语中、高级口译技能的初级阶段，为的是使学员通过学习，在较短的时间里为今后进一步参加英语中、高级口译培训奠定良好的基础，掌握基本的口译能力。为从事口译工作，学员需要在听、说、读、写、译等基本语言技能全面发展的基础上，强化英语口语和口译能力的培训。在实施英语中、高级口译资格证书考试项目的过程中，我们发现，不少考生未能通过第一阶段的笔试，主要是因为他们在听、读、写、译等方面的能力欠缺，而且知识面较窄；而未能通过第二阶段的口试的考生则大多是因为英语口语表达不畅，缺乏相应的口译技能。为使广大英语爱好者切实有效地全面提高英语水平，今后能够从事口译工作，上海市外语口译考试委员会于前年开始试行《上海市英语口译基础能力证书》考试，使之与英语中级、高级口译考试形成一个由低到高的完整系列，从而为这三个不同层次的培训和考试搭建了相应的平台。这样的设计，有利于全面、系统、科学地提高学员的英语综合水平和口译能力。

与英语中级、高级口译培训要求不同的是，参加基础口译培训的学员应具有基本的英语知识和应用能力，即相当于重点中学高中毕业生或大学一年级学生的英语水平。经过培训，学员的英语应用能力可望达到大学英语四级的要求，而且在英语听说和口译方面也可奠定良

好的基础。在此基础上经过进一步深造，学员就可以达到英语中级口译资格证书所要求具备的能力，即能够独立从事生活翻译、陪同翻译、涉外导游、外贸业务洽谈翻译等工作。

根据考试大纲，“上海市英语口译基础能力证书”考试分为笔试与口试两个部分。笔试部分以听力考试的形式举行；口试包括口语和口译两部分。为此，我们设计并编写了三本基础教材，分别针对听力、口语和口译，把侧重面放在听、说、译三项技能上。我们知道，长期以来大多数学校的英语教学对这三个方面不够重视，在一定程度上造成了人们所说的“哑巴英语”(基本上不会说英语)和“聋子英语”(听不懂原汁原味的英语)。而这样的弱点若不能克服，要想从事口译工作是根本不可能的。因此，在基础口译阶段，培训的重点应该是提高学员的听、说能力，并在此基础上掌握一些口译的基本要领。

考虑到英语教学应该是一个由浅入深、循序渐进的过程，我们在教材中除了编写针对性较强的教学内容外，还根据培训要求增加了类似预备练习的相关项目，以帮助学员和考生获得理想的学习效果。教材内容活泼多样，难度适中。所选用的材料以口语体为主，如对话、讲座等。题材具有时代性，紧扣现代社会与经济发展、贴近人们的日常生活与工作。教学安排有较强的可操作性，能使学员在听和说两方面进行大量的操练和实践。正文之后，各本教材还配备了相关背景介绍、英语听力、英语口语以及口译技能讲座，目的在于扩大学员的知识面，以便更好地发展听、说、译的技能。

《基础听力教程》、《基础口语教程》和《基础口译教程》作为一套综合性教材，所涵盖的三项技能培训是相辅相成的，既有统一的要求，又有各自的重点。在教学安排上，这三个方面的训练应该齐头并进。同时，基础教材又是与英语中、高级口译教材配套的系列教材，在诸多方面是和中、高两级相衔接的。通过基础阶段培训后，学员能比较容易地适应中、高级口译教材的教学要求，为以后进一步接受口译培训打下扎实的基础。

现在推出的这套基础口译教材，是以过去两年间所试用的胶印本为基础重新编写的。我们希望经过修订的新教材能更好地适应培训的需要，达到我们所设想的目的。当然，限于我们的学识，这套教材可

能还有不尽如人意之处，甚至存在各种差错。在此，我们恳请专家、学者、使用教材的教师和学员提出宝贵意见，以便编写者及时修正。

主编　**齐伟钧　孙万彪**

编者的话

《基础口译教程》属"上海市英语口译资格证书"应试培训系列教材之一，以拟参加"上海市英语口译基础能力证书考试"的学员为主要对象，同时也适用于各类基础阶段的英语口语和口译课的教学。对由于种种原因而无法参加口译培训却又有志参加口译考试者，本教程也可用作应考自学教材。

口译是一项实践性很强的语言交际活动。译员是否具有良好的语感，是否具有对英、汉语句较为熟练的处理能力，往往决定了口译质量的高低，或直接影响到口译的成败。换言之，译员的口译能力往往就体现在对各项语言技能综合掌握和运用的程度上。因此，译员必须在听、说、读、写等诸方面都具有较为扎实的基础，尤其具有较好的口头表达能力和耳听会意能力，即具有所谓"良好的语感"，这样才能保证口译得以顺利进行。当然，良好的语感和各项语言综合技能的掌握也可以在整个培训期间通过其他相关科目的学习和训练，加之平日的勤学苦练，得到不断的提高和完善。此外，口译工作的涉及面往往是多元庞杂的，因而也要求译员应具有较为宽广的知识面，并能不断摄入新的文化信息，了解新的发展动态，不断扩充语言知识和词汇量，从而达到在整体上提高自身的综合素质和语言能力的目的。

《基础口译教程》即以上述观点为指导，根据口译工作的特点进行选材和编写，体现了口译工作的基本要求以及当代中国改革开放的时代特征。本教程涉及范围较宽，每一单元均有其相对独立的主题，各单元之间又互有内在联系，构成一个有机整体，旨在全面提高学员的综合能力，从而为口译实践打下良好的基础。每一单元在布局设计上均分为五个层面，即：I. Vocabulary Preview；II. Background

Knowledge; III. Warming-up Practice; IV. Passage Interpretation; V. Useful Sentences and Expressions;“对话口译”和“篇章口译”均附有参考译文，便于学习者检测自己的口译能力和准确度。每一单元的注释部分用于讲解课文中的重、难点，并介绍常用的口译技巧和难点的处理方法，能帮助学习者突破语言上的障碍，准确掌握各项口译的特点和技巧，从而顺利达到有效学习的目的。

口译是一项很特殊的语言操作活动，是视、听、说、读、写等各项语言知识和技能的即席、综合运用的过程。因此，口译教学自有其不同于其他课程的特点和方法，即：既要重视语言能力的培养，又要根据教学内容和口译特点加强对口译技能的训练，更要注重教与学之间的互动关系。编者认为，口译教学惟有通过精讲多练，积极参与双向、双语思维活动，才能有所收效。

《基础口译教程》在正式付梓之前，已在有关院校和培训机构试用过几年，收效颇好，受到了使用者的欢迎和好评。编者在此基础上又对部分内容进行了调整、更新和充实，使之更趋合理、完善，更符合教与学的实际要求。

本教程在编写过程中得到了有关专家、学者的支持和指导，并参考了有关教材的内容，编者谨在此向他们致以诚挚的谢意。书中若存在不足或差错，祈望同行专家和广大学员批评、指正。

吴建国

2004年春

使用说明

《基础口译教程》按照《上海市英语口译基础能力证书考试大纲》而编写，用以培养和提高已具有一定英语水平，且有志从事英语口译工作人士的口译能力，使学习者能通过短期培训达到参加“上海市英语基础口译资格证书考试”，或从事一般口译工作所需具备的英汉/汉英口译水平，并为参加中、高级口译资格证书的考试奠定坚实的基础，做好铺垫和准备。

《基础口译教程》作为一本主要用于课堂教学的教材，在整体结构上分为16个单元，是根据一学期16周，每周3课时的培训计划而设定、编排的，也就是说，本教程所需课堂教学时数不宜少于48课时。

本教程强调读者、编者以及本书之间的相互作用和相互影响，从培养学员的综合语言知识和英/汉口译表达能力出发，经过为期16周的培训，力求使学习者的综合运用语言的能力，交际能力，特别是口译能力得到明显的提升，并能大体掌握口译的若干基本技巧。教师和学习者使用本书时，可根据实际情况对本教程的内容灵活掌握，有所侧重，变通处理。教师也可根据具体教学对象的要求，适当补充一些相关内容和练习。必须指出的是，本课程在教与学的过程中，应注重精讲与勤练，才能达到预定的目标。

如何增强英、汉两种语言的口头表达能力和逻辑思维能力，掌握和运用口译技巧，如今已成为英语教学和研究领域普遍关注和重视的一个课题。编者希望各位同行勇于探索并创出英/汉口译教学的新途径。同时，也欢迎使用本教程的教师和学员对本书提出批评和建议，以便我们在今后的教材修订和口译教学工作中加以改进和提高。

CONTENTS 目录

UNIT 1

SCHOOLS AND EDUCATION

学校与教育

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

prestigious	scholarship	Olympiad
master	interact	participant
major	circus	breakthrough
expect	rural	accelerate
humanity	audience	electromagnetism
placement	guardian	aspiration
intermediate	interview	make a contribution
communicate	amazing	mentor
recommend	clap	impart
enroll	milestone	curiosity
wishful	freshman	

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

1. 在美国，中学毕业生有举行毕业演说的习俗，参加者有学生、老师和学生家长等。学生们身穿毕业服，头戴毕业帽，就自己所选择的话题举行讲演。讲演可采用散文体，也可采用诗歌体。
2. 奥林匹克运动会是体育界的盛会，而在学科竞赛领域，也有数学奥林匹克竞赛、物理奥林匹克竞赛、化学奥林匹克竞赛等，我国中学

生在此类竞赛中屡有出色表现。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **I finally made it.**

A: I finally made it. I'm now a student of the University of California.

B: Congratulations! You must have worked very hard.

A: Yes, I had to work very hard to be successful, and I'm proud to be a student of such a prestigious university. Were you proud to graduate from UC?

B: Yes. I have a Bachelor of Arts degree and I'm going on for my master's degree. What do you plan to major in?

A: I expect to teach history or geography in a high school, so I think I'll major in one of those.

2. **What course are you going to take?**

A: I'd like to do an English course. I've already done the placement test and I'm at the intermediate level, but I'd really like to be able to communicate more fluently with other English speakers.

B: Well, I can recommend the Oral Skills course — it's excellent.

A: Hmm, but it costs more than $2,000, which is far too expensive.

B: How about this General English course — the class size is the same as that of the oral skills course and it's cheaper.

A: Yes, that sounds better. OK, I'll enroll in that one then.

3. **Have you ever thought of going abroad to study?**

A: Hi, David, have you ever thought about going abroad to study?

B: Never crossed my mind. What about you?

A: All the time but ... I know it's just wishful thinking. My parents are only farmers. The only way is to get a scholarship and, well, you know I'm not brilliant.

B: Hey, don't give up on your dream so easily. Remember the old saying, "Where there is a will, there is a way." Anyway, why do you want to go abroad to study? Aren't our local universities good enough?

A: No, no, don't get me wrong. I've got nothing against our local universities. It's just that I want to experience what it's like studying in a different country, living in a different climate, interacting with people from a different culture.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

To tell the truth, it was never in my dream to graduate from an American high school. Three years ago I was working in different restaurants in Ohio, New York, and Pennsylvania, and I only wished one day to learn how to speak English. But now I am here giving a speech in English. What's more, I am going to college in the fall. However, I will never forget where I have come from.

I was born in a little village. At that time my family was very poor. I remember when I was young I used to ask my mother for just one egg a day, but she wasn't able to do it.[1] When I was eight my father sent me to a circus school. Sometimes we went to rural areas to perform for farmers.[2] Audiences who came for the show were often without shoes and sat on the floor to watch us. Most of the children in the countryside didn't go to school at all because their parents were too busy worrying about where the dinner for tomorrow would come from. Of course we also performed for wealthy people.

Last summer vacation I went to visit my guardian. We lived in

a little hotel in downtown L. A. We had some friends who lived in the wealthy areas, and sometimes we were invited as guests to their homes. But every time when we came back to our little hotel, we would see homeless people sleeping on the street next to it. It was a strange feeling to see those people there in a city that seems so rich.

Last week I went to a college interview, and I told the woman interviewer there that because I had received many people's help getting an education, I wished one day to help other people, too. I had said this in other college interviews, but this time she asked in return how I planned to help other people.[3] I was very surprised by the question, and I was unable to answer it because I never really thought about how. People always want to help others, but they are usually too busy reaching the goals they set for their own lives.

Maybe one day we should all sit down and ask ourselves, "how can we help other people?" Many people think that they only help when they can change the world. No, you don't have to because it is improbable for one person to do the whole job. If you can help one little thing, then you are amazing already. But we need every one of us to do one little thing.

Passage 2

Friends, parents, families and the 2000 graduating class of the Beacon School, welcome!

Four years ago, you started as 9th graders at Beacon School when I was a new teacher. I am amazed at what you have accomplished both in and out of the classroom over the last four years.[1] You all have so much to be proud of today. And as we take so much pride in you today, let us also make sure that we recognize the family and friends who have supported you, pushed you, and today who have come to celebrate this day with you.[2] So please, seniors, take a moment to clap your hands for your parents and families who have helped you get to this milestone day ...

You are a special class to me. You all were my first class. You

were freshmen when I was a new teacher. You were my first computer students, my first English students ... and as I have said to so many of you, I cannot even begin to imagine Beacon without you, because you, in so many ways, are Beacon for me.[3]

I stand here now, and I look at the young men and women sitting in front of me in their caps and gowns. I think of four years of struggles and triumphs ... of friendships ... of dance shows and basketball games ... of research you performed and Web sites you built ...[4] I can imagine nothing better than having been able to have shared the last four years with all of you.

In closing, I want to let you know that my life has been changed for the better as a result of the time that I have spent with you.[5] And I thank you all for that. And I wish you all of the best that life has to offer you, for you all deserve it.

Passage 3

Distinguished guests,
Participants of the 3rd Asian Physics Olympiad,
Ladies and gentlemen,

It is with much pleasure that I welcome all the young participants from all over Asia to Singapore for this 3rd Asian Physics Olympiad.

The 20th century which has just ended was a remarkable period of scientific breakthroughs and achievements. In the field of physics, we have seen many key discoveries. The pace of scientific progress, and the speed in which scientific discoveries have been turned into useful applications, have also been accelerating.[1] I am told that it took 65 years between the discovery of the theory of electromagnetism to the invention of the television, 18 years for X-ray, 5 years for radar, and only 2 years for laser.

You represent some of the best young minds in Asia. You embody the hope and aspiration of your family, your country, and of Asia.[2] Many of you will have that special talent for scientific research and discovery. I urge you to make a contribution to the field

of science and to the well-being of society.[3]

To the mentors and teachers who are here today, an equally heavy responsibility rests on your shoulders. Your role in guiding the young is more than just the imparting of knowledge.[4] Indeed, your role is to help these young physicists view the world with curiosity, open-mindedness, and a healthy sense of doubt.

I am certain you will have a very good time interacting with one another in this Asian Physics Olympiad. I hope that the bonds of friendship formed over the course of the week will be a starting point for further exchanges.[5] Perhaps, one day, I will read about some of you making scientific breakthroughs and competing for the Nobel Prize in Physics.

It is with much pleasure that I now declare open this 3rd Asian Physics Olympiad.

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

各位，下午好：

很高兴来前进中学参加这样一次会议。先简单作一下自我介绍。我以前也是一名教师，在一所中学教了 16 年英语。我在大学学的是历史，但学校缺英语教师，校长就让我教英语[1]。离开学校以后，我仍一直从事着与教育有关的研究工作。

前两天在报纸上看到一则报道，说中国有超过⅗的中小学生通过补习以取得更好的成绩。[2] 其实，这一现象在亚洲其他一些国家也十分普遍。这些国家有一个共同点，家长十分重视子女的学习和教育。他们希望孩子能取得更好的成绩。如果能让孩子进入本地或海外大学，他们愿意作出任何牺牲。[3]

依我看，这种做法弊大于利。[4] 实际上，这种做法已经给学生带来许多不必要的压力。[5] 为了应付课外补习的负担，学生的学校生活质量受到影响。他们无法在下课后或假期去做自己感兴趣的事情。对于一些学生，这种做法可能会造成健康问题。因此，我希望在座的各位能与我一起想办法解决这一问题。

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. How many courses are you going to take this semester?
2. You must finish registration today, since it's the last day for completing your schedule and paying your bill.
3. You have no assignments for the weekend, but don't forget your composition for next week.
4. The results of the final examinations will be released next Tuesday, two days before we are off for summer vacation.
5. I had a tough time with English Grammar — I got a C plus in the final examination.
6. It's a famous university, but it doesn't offer courses I'm interested in.
7. I think I'll apply to Yale University first and see if they have any scholarships.
8. Extracurricular activities are important, because young people learn lessons about life outside the classroom.
9. A recent survey found that 57% of 3,479 students feel that our education system is too examination-oriented.
10. As the examinations are coming closer, senior students feel increasing pressure from teachers and parents.

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. I remember when I was young I used to ask my mother for just one egg a day, but she wasn't able to do it. 记得小时候我要妈妈

一天给我吃一个鸡蛋，但她没能做到。

used to 意为“过去常常”，be used to 意为“习惯于做某事”。如：

It used to be believed that sugar could decay the teeth. 过去人们认为糖会导致蛀牙。

Our company used to do business with theirs. 我们公司过去和他们的公司常有业务往来。

Now I am used to getting up early. 我现在习惯早起。

2. Sometimes we went to rural areas to perform for farmers. 有时候我们会去农村为农民演出。

(1) rural 意为“农村的”。如：

I do love quiet, rural England. 我确实喜欢安静的英格兰乡村。

(2) perform 意为“表演”，有时也解释为“履行，做”。如：

The troupe performed a three-act play. 剧团演出了一出三幕剧。

The surgeon performed the operation. 医师做了手术。

They are required to perform their contractual obligations. 他们需要履行合同规定的义务。

3. I had said this in other college interviews, but this time she asked in return how I planned to help other people. 我去其他大学参加面试同样也讲过这句话，但这一次她反过来问我我准备怎样去帮助别人。

Passage 2

1. I am amazed at what you have accomplished both in and out of the classroom over the last four years. 在这四年中你们在课堂内外所取得的成绩令我惊叹。

(1) amaze 意为“吃惊，惊叹，佩服”。astonish 表示“使人大吃一惊，几乎无法使人相信”，但没有“惊叹”的意思。surprise 语气较上述两词弱，只表示“出乎意外地惊异”。如：

We were amazed at the ingenuity with which they solved their difficulties. 他们在解决困难中所表现的智慧使我们惊叹[佩服]。

I was astonished at his rudeness. 他的粗野使我大吃一惊。

We were surprised at finding the house empty. 我们惊讶地发现房子是空的。

(2) accomplish 意为“完成，实现”，有“努力完成某件工作”的意味，往往强调“完成”所经历的整个历程。后面常接的名词有任务、使命、目标、旅程等。complete 比 accomplish 具体，可接建筑、工程、书籍等名词，指“按预期目标把未完成的工作经过进一步的努力使之完成”，主要涵义是“补足缺少的部分”。如：

He intended to accomplish his purpose。他想达到目的。

I accomplished two hours' work before dinner. 我在吃饭前完成了两小时的工作。

You should accomplish the task within the allotted time. 你们应当在规定时间内完成这项任务。

The building will be completed by the end of this month. 这座楼于本月底建成。

2. And as we take so much pride in you today, let us also make sure that we recognize the family and friends who have supported you, pushed you, and today who have come to celebrate this day with you. 今天在我们为你们感到自豪的同时，请不要忘记支持你们，督促你们，今天来这里与你们共同庆祝的家长和亲朋好友们。

(1) take pride in 意为“为……自豪”。如：

She took pride in writing beautifully. 她为自己写得一手好字而感到自豪。

(2) make sure 意为“设法确保把事情给弄清楚”。如：

Make sure the time and place is correct. 弄清楚时间和地点都没错。

We'd better take a taxi if we want to make sure of getting there in time. 如果我们想要及时赶到那儿的话，最好还是叫辆出租车。

He made sure to fasten his seatbelt before driving off. 他开车出发前没忘记系上安全带。

3. ... and as I have said to so many of you, I cannot even begin to imagine Beacon without you, because you, in so many ways, are

Beacon for me. …… 就像我跟许多同学说的一样，我不敢想像灯塔学校没有你们会是什么样子，因为在许多方面，你们就是我心中的灯塔学校。

"as"在句中作连词，跟从句，表示"就像……一样"。

4. I think of four years of struggles and triumphs ... of friendships ... of dance shows and basketball games ... of research you performed and Web sites you built ... 我想到了四年的奋斗和胜利……友谊……舞蹈表演和篮球赛……你们做的研究和建的网站……

   句中的"of four years of struggles and triumphs"、"of friendships"、"of dance shows and basketball games"、"of research you performed and Web sites you built"都是用来修饰"think"。

5. In closing, I want to let you know that my life has been changed for the better as a result of the time that I have spent with you. 最后，我想让你们知道，因为与你们在一起，我的生活变得更加美好。

   句中的第一个 that 从句从"that my life"至"you"，用来作宾语从句，第二个 that 从句从"that I have"至"you"，用来作定语从句。

   as a result of 表示"……的结果"。如：

   As a result, there is often trouble in American families. 因此，美国家庭中常常会出现麻烦事。

   She died as a direct result of the accident. 那次事故直接造成她的死亡。

Passage 3

1. The pace of scientific progress, and the speed in which scientific discoveries have been turned into useful applications, have also been accelerating. 科学进步的速度，以及科学发现转化为实际应用的速度也日益加快。

   在句中"in which scientific discoveries have been turned into useful applications"作定语从句，修饰"the speed"，而"have also been accelerating"作谓语，修饰"the pace of scientific progress"和"the speed"。

2. You embody the hope and aspiration of your family, your country, and of Asia. 你们象征着家庭、国家以及整个亚洲的希望和抱负。

在句中"of your family, your country, and of Asia"修饰"the hope and aspiration"。

(1) embody 意为"表达，体现"，也可解释为"包含"。如：

The article embodied all his opinions on the incident. 这篇文章表达了他对这一事件的全部看法。

This book embodies all the rules. 这书把所有的规则都包括进去了。

The new edition of the encyclopedia embodies many improvements. 这部百科全书的新版本有许多改进之处。

(2) aspiration 意为"强烈的愿望"，后面往往跟"to, for, after"。如：

I have no aspiration for fame. 我不图成名。

3. I urge you to make a contribution to the field of science and to the well-being of society. 我希望你们为科学和社会福利作出贡献。

(1) urge 意为"催促"。如：

She urges me to take steps to deal with the matter. 她催我处理此事。

He urged immediate action against street violence. 他极力主张马上采取行动对付街头暴力。

(2) make a contribution to 意为"为……作贡献"。如：

He made a contribution to the relief fund. 他向救济基金捐款。

The editor is short of volunteers who will make a contribution for the May issue. 编者缺少志愿者愿意为五月号的杂志写稿件。

4. Your role in guiding the young is more than just the imparting of knowledge. 在指导年轻人的过程中，你们的作用不仅仅在于向他们传授知识。

(1) more than 意为"极其，不止于"。如：

You are much more than an acquaintance. 你不只是一个熟人。

We are more than glad to meet you here. 在这里见到你，我们极为高兴。

(2) impart 意为"告知，传授(知识)"。如：

She imparted the secret to her fiance. 她将秘密告知了她的未婚夫。

A good teacher imparts wisdom to his pupils. 一个好的教师把智慧赋予学生。

5. I hope that the bonds of friendship formed over the course of the week will be a starting point for further exchanges. 我希望你们在一周的时间里结下的友谊能成为将来继续交流的出发点。

   在句中，"formed over the course of the week"修饰"the bonds of friendship"，一起构成宾语从句的主语。

PART B

1. "我在大学学的是历史，但学校缺英语教师，校长就让我教英语。"

   句中"在大学学的是历史"可用"major"，表示"学，主修"，可作动词，也可作名词。作名词，可译为 "at college my major was history";作动词，可译为"I majored in history at college"。"缺"可译为"was in bad need of"或"was short of"。整句句子可译作"Actually, I majored in history at college, but the school was short of English teachers, so the headmaster asked me to teach English"。

2. "前两天在报纸上看到一则报道，说中国有超过3/5的中小学生通过补习以取得更好的成绩。"

   句中"看到一则报道"可译为"read a newspaper report"或"come across a report in the newspaper"，报道的内容可用同位语从句或定语从句表示。

   整句句子可译作"I read a newspaper report the other day that more than three-fifths of Chinese school children rely on extra tuition to enhance their grades."或"I came across a report in the newspaper, which said that more than three-fifths of Chinese school children rely on remediation to enhance their grades"。

3. “如果能让孩子进入本地或海外大学，他们愿意作出任何牺牲。”
该句句子的条件句可用 if … ，或用动词不定式表示：“They are ready to make every sacrifice if they can get their children into a university locally or abroad.”或者“They are willing to make every sacrifice to get their children into a university locally or abroad”。
4. “依我看，这种做法弊大于利。”
“弊大于利”可译为“do more harm than good”，整句句子可译作“So far as I can see, this practice can do more harm than good”。
5. “实际上，这种做法已经给学生带来许多不必要的压力。”
“不必要”可译为“undue”或“unnecessary”。整句句子可译作“Actually, the practice has exerted undue pressure and stress on students”或“Actually, the practice has got students under much unnecessary pressure”。

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **我终于成功了。**

A：我终于成功了。我现在是加州大学的一名学生了。

B：祝贺你了。你学习一定很用功吧。

A：不错，为了能考上大学，我不得不学得很用功。能成为加州大学这样一所名牌大学的大学生，我觉得很自豪。你是加州大学毕业的，你感到自豪吗？

B：对，我也引以为荣。我已获得了文学学士学位，我还想继续攻读硕士学位。你想学什么专业？

A：我想成为一名中学历史或地理教师，所以我想主修这一这类专业。

2. **你想学什么课程？**

A：我想参加英语学习。我已经参加了分班测试，是中级水平，但我希望能更加流利地与其他说英语的人交流。

B：哦，我推荐你上口语技巧课，这门课相当好。

A：嗯，但这门课要两千多美金，太贵了。

B：那么通用英语怎么样？班级大小跟口语技巧课一样，但学费便宜。

A：是的，这听起来不错。好，我就报这门课。

3. **你考虑过出国读书吗？**

A：大卫，你好。你想过出国读书吗？

B：我从未想过。你呢？

A：我一直想（出国读书），但是……我知道这只不过是我的痴想罢了。我的父母亲都是农民。（想出国读书）惟一的办法就是获得奖学金，可是，你知道我没那么聪明。

B：嗨，不要轻易放弃梦想。别忘了“有志者事竟成”这句谚语。可是，你为什么要出国读书呢？难道说国内的大学不够好吗？

A：不，不，别误解我的意思。我对国内大学没有不好的想法。我只是想体验一下在异国读书的经历，体验不同的气候，与来自另一种文化的人交流。

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

说心里话，我做梦都没有想过从美国的一所高中毕业。三年前，我在俄亥俄、纽约、宾夕法尼亚等地的饭店工作，我只是想着有一天能学会说英语。然而，现在我却在这里用英语讲演。而且，今年秋天我就要上大学了。但我不会忘记我来自哪里。

我出生在一个小村庄。那时我家十分贫穷。记得小时候我要妈妈一天给我吃一个鸡蛋，但她没能做到。8岁时，父亲把我送到了一所马戏学校。有时候我们会去农村为农民演出。观众们往往是光着脚，席地而坐，观看我们演出。（那时）大多数农村孩子根本不去上学，因

为他们的父母亲忙于为第二天的吃饭问题发愁。当然，我们也为有钱人演出。

去年暑假，我去看望了我的监护人。我们住在洛杉矶市中心的一家小旅馆。我们有些朋友住在富有的地区，有时会邀请我们去他们家做客。但每当我们回到旅馆时，我们都会看见无家可归的人躺在旅馆旁边的大街上。在表面上看起来如此富有的城市里看到这些人，心里觉得怪怪的。

上周，我去一所大学参加面试，我对一位女面试官说，因为我得到了许多人的帮助才有机会接受教育，所以希望有一天自己也能帮助别人。我去其他大学参加面试同样也讲过这句话，但这一次她反过来问我我准备怎样去帮助别人。她这样问我，我感到很吃惊，不知该如何回答，因为我从来没有想过该怎样去帮助他们。人总希望去帮助别人，但往往又忙于实现自己的生活目标。

或许有一天，我们都该坐下来，问问自己，我们怎样才能去帮助别人。许多人认为要帮助别人，就得有能力改变世界。不，你不需要改变世界，因为改变世界单凭一个人的力量是做不到的。如果你能帮助做一点小小的事情，就很了不起了。但是，我们需要每个人都去做一点小小的事情。

Passage 2

朋友们，家长们，2000年灯塔学校毕业班的学生们，欢迎你们！

四年前，你们在灯塔学校升九年级的时候，我还是一名新教师。在这四年中你们在课堂内外所取得的成绩令我惊叹。你们每个人都因为今天而自豪。今天在我们为你们感到自豪的同时，请不要忘记支持你们，督促你们，今天来这里与你们共同庆祝的家长和亲朋好友们。所以，同学们，让我们为他们鼓掌，是他们帮助你们达到具有里程碑意义的今天。

对我来说，你们是一个特殊的班级。你们是我的第一批学生。当我还是新教师的时候，你们也是新生。你们是我第一批电脑课的学生，第一批英语课的学生……就像我跟许多同学说的一样，我不敢想像灯塔学校没有你们会是什么样子，因为在许多方面，你们就是我心中的灯塔学校。

我现在站在这里，看着(你们这些)年轻人戴着毕业帽，穿着毕业服坐在我面前。我想到了四年的奋斗和胜利……友谊……舞蹈表演和

篮球赛……你们做的研究和建的网站……我无法想像有什么能比与你们分享过去的四年时光更加美好。

最后，我想让你们知道，因为与你们在一起，我的生活变得更加美好，我要谢谢你们。祝愿你们拥有生活中最美好的东西，因为你们受之无愧。

Passage 3

尊敬的各位来宾，

第三届亚洲物理奥林匹克竞赛的选手们，

女士们，先生们：

很荣幸欢迎亚洲各国的年轻选手来新加坡参加第三届亚洲物理奥林匹克竞赛。

在刚刚过去的 20 世纪，科学领域取得了极大的突破和成就。在物理学方面，我们看到了许多重要发现。科学进步的速度，以及科学发现转化为实际应用的速度也日益加快。我听说电磁理论的发现到电视机的发明用了 65 年时间，X 光用了 18 年时间，雷达用了 5 年时间，而激光只用了两年时间。

你们代表着亚洲的杰出青年。你们象征着家庭、国家以及整个亚洲的希望和抱负。你们中的许多人有从事科学研究和发现的特殊天赋。我希望你们为科学和社会福利作出贡献。

对于今天到场的导师和老师们来说，你们肩上的责任同样重大。在指导年轻人的过程中，你们的作用不仅仅在于向他们传授知识。你们的角色是帮助这些年轻的物理学家们用好奇心、开放的思想和健康的怀疑态度来审视这个世界。

我相信你们在这次亚洲物理奥林匹克竞赛中通过相互交流，会度过美好的时光。我希望你们在一周的时间里结下的友谊能成为将来继续交流的出发点。或许有一天，我会(在报刊上)读到你们中的一些人在科学领域取得了突破，而且，在争取获得诺贝尔物理奖。

现在，我很荣幸地宣布第三届亚洲物理奥林匹克竞赛开幕。

PART B

Good afternoon, everyone.

It's a pleasure to attend this meeting in Qianjin Middle School.

I'd like to make a brief self-introduction first. I used to be a teacher myself. I taught English at a middle school for 16 years. Actually, I majored in history at college, but the school was short of English teachers, so the headmaster asked me to teach English. I have been doing relevant research work after I quit teaching.

I read a newspaper report the other day that more than three-fifths of Chinese school children rely on extra tuition to enhance their grades. This phenomenon is also widespread in other Asian countries. These countries have one feature in common: parents in these countries place much importance on children's learning and education. They expect that their children can enhance their grades. They are ready to make every sacrifice if they can get their children into a university locally or abroad.

So far as I can see, this practice can do more harm than good. Actually, the practice has exerted undue pressure and stress on students. The quality of school life is affected as students struggle to cope with the burden of additional learning outside the classroom. They have no time to enjoy their interests after school or during vacations. In some cases, this could lead to health hazards. Therefore, I hope that all of you present here today can join me in finding a solution to this problem.

UNIT 2

WORK AND LIFE

工作与生活

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

share my view with you
on a monthly basis
allowance
set aside
account for
sensibly
accommodation
budget
Census Bureau
unmarried
single-parent family
end in divorce
specification
cope with
be prepared to do sth.
contract
return air fare
at a nominal rent
astronaut
re-entry capsule
recovery team
orbit
physical check-up
gala
autonomous region
Aerospace Command and Control Center
congratulation message

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

1. 孩子的教育越来越受到家长的重视，他们想方设法为孩子创造条件。作为孩子来说，必须学会明智用钱。

2. 美国的单亲家庭近来有上升的趋势，其中，单亲父亲所占的比例也比想像中的多。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **How many hours a week do you work in China?**

   A: How many hours a week do you work in China?

   B: Normally, forty hours a week from Monday through Friday.

   A: What if you work more than forty hours a week? Do you get paid?

   B: Certainly. If you work more than forty hours or on weekends you get overtime pay.

2. **What do you want me to do now?**

   A: What are you doing, Xiaowang?

   B: I'm typing some letters.

   A: Please show them to me.

   B: Here they are.

   A: These aren't really urgent.

   B: I'm almost finished with them.

   A: Finish them later.

   B: What do you want me to do now?

   A: Please type this report for our manager. He is going to send it to all the salespersons.

   B: Okay, sir.

3. **What are you going to take up as a career?**

   A: What did you say you were going to take up as a career?

   B: Architecture. Actually, I've already started. I began my studies at Tongji University last autumn.

   A: What are you going to do when you finish?

   B: There's a great deal of scope for architecture in China and a lot of useful work needs to be done — building bridges,

roads, high-rise buildings, etc.

A: Well, I was good at maths and art at school and I think I have a certain talent for designing. I suppose it's my personal qualities that have made me choose architecture, and not law, for instance.

4. **What do you do during the day?**

A: Good morning, Ms Li. I'd like to ask you something about what you do during the day. You have a busy life, I believe?

B: Yes, I do. I get up at six and go to the market to buy some food.

A: What to do next?

B: After breakfast, I take my son to school at seven and then go to my office by bike. I arrive at eight.

A: What do you do in the office?

B: I usually type letters or answer the telephone.

A: Do you go out for lunch?

B: No, I have lunch at the office.

A: What time do you leave the office?

B: At about five.

A: What do you do in the evening?

B: After supper, I read newspapers and magazines for a while. I never watch TV. I'm usually very tired and so I go to bed early, at about eight.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

Good afternoon, everyone.

I'm very glad to be invited to share my view with you[1] on how to spend our money sensibly.

I was told that most of you are living away from home for the first time. So the most important thing is to learn how to manage your finances[2] carefully. You must plan your budget well on a monthly basis.[3] For example, suppose your parents give you an allowance[4] of 1,000 *yuan* each month. 30% of that should be set aside[5] for accommodation. That adds up to 300 *yuan*. Food will account for[6] another 30% because food is expensive here.

Then you should keep 10% for transport, since occasionally you may need to take a taxi to go to places. And another 10% should be reserved for books and periodicals.

Finally, you should set aside about 10% for entertainment. It's true that you are here to study, but all work and no play[7] is not the proper way to study.

After all these expenses, you will be left with 100 *yuan* for a rainy day.

Passage 2

Today we talk about a major change in the American family. It is the increase in the number of families with only one parent.

About 22% of American children now live with only one parent. One of the reasons for this is the increasing number of women who have children without being married. The United States Census Bureau[1] recently released a report on the situation[2]. The report included women between the ages of 18 and 44 who had never been married. It said 24% of them had at least one child. Almost 4 million unmarried women in the United States are mothers.

Experts have tried to explain the reasons for the increase. In the past women were expected to marry and remain home with their children. They depend on their husbands to earn money to support the family. Experts say women were pushed into marriage in many parts of American society. A woman's family expected her to be married. So did the religious groups, customs and laws.

Now an increasing number of unmarried men are caring for

their children, too. The Census Bureau says the number increased by more than 100% in the last twelve years. Today 14% of all single-parent families[3] in America are now headed by men[4]. Most of the men began caring for their children after their marriage ended in divorce. But almost 25% of single fathers have never been married.

Passage 3

ACME Atlantic is a well-known and respected trading company.[1] We handle imports directly from manufacturers in 35 different countries, often to our own specifications[2], and currently export to 46 different countries worldwide.

We are looking for enthusiastic people to work in our office in Bermuda on temporary 3-, 6- and 9- month contracts[3]. Applicants must be able to speak and write at least one foreign language fluently and can be nationals of any country.

Experience in import/export will be an advantage, but as special training will be available this is not essential[4]. The main requirements are a willingness to work as a member of a team[5], to cope with[6] pressure, to use the telephone in a foreign language and in English and to be prepared occasionally to work long hours when necessary[7].

There are several posts available and long-term prospects are good, though initially all successful applicants will be contracted[8] for a maximum of 9 months.

The salary we will offer is excellent. We will pay your return air fare and provide adequate accommodation at a nominal rent.[9]

Please apply in your own handwriting, enclosing your resume to us.

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

"神舟"五号航天飞船[1]在内蒙古草原[2]顺利着陆，中国首位宇航员杨利伟面带微笑走出返回舱，并向搜救人员挥手致意[3]。

北京时间10月16日早晨6点零7分，在太空遨游[4]21小时，绕地球轨道飞行60多万千米的中国航天员杨利伟，乘坐"神舟"五号航天飞船顺利归来。在宇宙中飞行21小时后，杨利伟表示他感觉很好。这是中国人第一次在太空中遨游。

杨利伟走出返回舱后，医生立刻对他进行了身体检查[5]，检查结果表明杨利伟身体状况良好。早晨7点40分左右，杨利伟乘坐军用直升机飞往北京，届时将举行隆重的庆祝活动。

早晨6点左右，在北京航天指挥控制中心[6]的指挥下，"神舟"五号航天飞船的返回舱进入中国的领空。几分钟后，返回舱在位于中国西北的内蒙古自治区安全降落，[7]宇航员杨利伟说飞船状况良好[8]。

中国国家总理温家宝在贺电中说，中国首次载人航天飞行[9]的圆满成功将载入中国航天事业发展的史册[10]。

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. Living on one's own can help one to become self-reliant.
2. What I don't like about my job is that I get home very late every night.
3. I like my job as a tourist guide very much because I like to deal with people.
4. According to a survey, the average amount spent on books and magazines is 50 *yuan*.
5. People looking for a job usually have to write around before they can get an interview.
6. Mrs Jones lives on her own and has to look after her two children alone.
7. The country has seen a sharp drop in the birth rate in the last few years.
8. Juvenile delinquency is on the increase, with over 15% of serious crimes being committed by children under the age of 17.
9. Parents should look after their children, but they should not be overindulging.
10. I always put my money in a bank. I never make investments.

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. ... to share my view with you ...：……与大家交流看法。

   share 一词虽有“分担，分配，分享，平分”之意，但在口译时应采用贴切的词语灵活处理。如：

   I'd like to share my thoughts with you. 我想把我的想法告诉你。

   I think we all share your concern about this matter. 我想我们大家和你一样关心此事。

   I don't share his opinion. 我不同意他的意见。

   We share the same tastes and interests. 我们有相同的兴趣爱好。

2. ... how to manage your finances ...：……如何理财。

   (1) manage 为“经营，管理，设法对付”等意。如：

   My wife manages our money very well. 我妻子很会理财。

   How he managed to find us is beyond me. 我搞不懂他是怎么设法找到我们的。

   (2) manage，conduct，direct 这 3 个词均可指“权威性地指导或处理”。

   manage 强调熟练灵巧地处理人事或事务，以期获得良好的效果。如：

   He managed a large department store. 他经营一家大百货公司。

   conduct 强调监督一群人的活动。如：

   The teacher conducted the class on a tour of the museum. 老师带领全班学生参观博物馆。

   direct 强调对一群人提出建议或指示，指导他们的事务或活动。如：

He directed the building of the new bridge. 他负责这座新桥的建设。

3. You must plan your budget well on a monthly basis: 你们必须（应当）做好月度预算。

   on ... basis 意为"以……方式，在……基础上"。如：

   on a friendly basis：在友好的基础上；

   on a barter basis：按物物交换的方式；

   be paid on an hourly (piecework) basis：计时(计件)领取报酬；

   promotion on a merit basis：论功晋升；

   use labor on a contract basis：按合同雇佣劳工。

4. allowance：此处意为"津贴，补贴费"。如：

   People who travel on business are given traveling allowances. 因公出差的人有出差补贴。

   The scholarship includes an allowance of $100 for books. 奖学金里包括 100 美元的书费。

5. set aside：此处意为"拨出，(把……)另外存起来"。如：

   Try to set aside some time to visit him. 尽量抽一些时间去看看他吧。

   set aside money for one's old age：把钱留着晚年用。

6. account for：此处意为"说明(钱的用途，事情的原因等)"。此短语另外还有"占……"的意思。如：

   Computer software accounts for some 70% of our range of products. 计算机软件在我们的产品种类中约占 70%。

7. all work and no play：这一短语来自于谚语 All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy.（只工作不玩耍，聪明孩子也变傻。）此处也可直译为"光学习，不玩耍"。

Passage 2

1. Census Bureau：人口调查局。

   census 一词意为"人口普查，(调查得来的)统计数或统计记录"。如：

   to carry out a census：进行人口普查；

   a national census：全国人口普查；

at (或 in)the 1996 census：在 1996 年人口普查中。

2. ... recently released a report on the situation. ……最近公布了有关这方面情况的报告。

   release 此处意为"发布(新闻)"。如：

   The information was released to the press. 这条消息已向新闻界公布了。

   Don't release the news to the public until we give you the go-ahead. 在我们准许之前，不要向公众公布这一消息。

3. single-parent families：单亲家庭。有时也可说 single-parent households。

4. ... are now headed by men. ……是男子汉当家。

   head 在此句中为动词，意为"主管，领导"。如：

   He headed a firm in Shanghai. 他在上海主管一家公司。

   Who will head the team? 谁来当队长?

Passage 3

1. ... a well-known and respected trading company. ……一家有名气、有信誉的贸易公司。

   此句中的 and 在翻译时可省略；而 respected 译为"有信誉"则属灵活译法。此类处理方法应根据实际语境作相应的灵活处理。

2. ... to our own specifications ...：……是根据我们的规格和要求生产的，

   specification 作"规格"或"具体要求"讲，是可数名词。如：

   specifications for a garden：对花园的具体要求。

3. temporary contracts：意为"短期合同"。

4. ... as special training will be available this is not essential. ……经验不是必须的要求，因为公司在这方面会提供专门培训。

   "as" 引出的是一个原因状语从句，它的主语是 this is not essential，而 this 则指前半句所说的 experience in import/export。

5. a willingness to work as a member of a team：有团队意识。

   a member of a team 还常常用 a team player 这个词组来代替。如：

   We think Nancy will get the job for sure. She is highly qualified,

and she is also a team player. 我们认为南希肯定会得到那份工作。她不但很胜任，而且团队意识很强。

6. cope with：意为“对付，妥善处理”。如：

He knows how to cope with complicated situations. 他知道如何应付复杂的局面。

7. ... to be prepared occasionally to work long hours when necessary. ……在需要的时候能加班。

be prepared to do sth. 意为：“准备或愿意做某事”。如：

Are you prepared to pay for it? 你已打算为此付出代价吗?

8. contract：该词既可以用作名词，也可以用作动词。如：

She signed a 9-month employment contract. 她签了一个为期9个月的劳动合同(作名词)。

All successful applicants will be contracted for a maximum 9 months. 所有合格的申请人最多只能签9个月的合同(作动词)。

9. We will pay your return air fare and provide adequate accommodation at a nominal rent. 我们将为您报销往返机票并提供膳宿，膳宿仅象征性地收费。

此处的 return 为形容词，意为“往返的”，return air fare 译为“往返机票”；nominal 指“微不足道的(金额)”，at a nominal rent 是说“以极少的租金(提供住宿)”。

PART B

1. “‘神舟’五号航天飞船”。

应译为 the Shenzhou 5 Spaceship。

2. “内蒙古草原”。

根据实际情形，翻译时可加上“戈壁滩”，译为：the grasslands in Gobi Desert, Inner Mongolia。

3. “向搜救人员挥手致意”。

可译为 waving to the recovery team。

4. “在太空遨游”。

此句主语为“中国航天员杨利伟”，因此，“遨游”可译为 spend，即：Yang has spent ... in outer space，而此段最后一句“这是中国人第一次在太空中遨游”系强调性重复，在口译中，可根据具

体选用的句式，译为 the first by a Chinese。

5. “医生立刻对他进行了身体检查”。
   (1) “医生”可译为 doctors，也可译为 physicians，即“内科医生”；
   (2) “身体检查”可译为 physical check-up，也可译为 physical examination，一般不译为 body examination。
6. “航天指挥控制中心”。
   可译为 Aerospace Command and Control Center.
   此句中的“指挥”出现两次，一处为专有名词，另一处为动词，其中动词可选用 guide 一词。
7. “返回舱在……安全降落”。
   “降落”与“着落”，“登陆”等均可译为 land，因此，此处可译为 the capsule landed safely in ...。
8. “杨利伟说飞船状况良好”。
   此处“说”应理解为 reported，因此，可译为 Yang reported “conditions good”。
9. “载人航天飞行”。
   可译为 manned spaceflight，此为专业约定译法。
10. “载入……史册”。
   可译为 be written into the history of ...。

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **在中国你们每星期工作几个小时?**
   A：在中国你们每星期工作几小时?
   B：一般是从星期一到星期五共 40 小时。
   A：如果工作超过 40 小时怎么办呢？有报酬吗?
   B：当然有。如果你每星期工作超过 40 小时或周末还工作，就可以得到加班费。

2. **你要我现在干什么?**

A：你在做什么，小王?

B：我在打一些信件。

A：请给我看看。

B：给你。

A：这些信不急用。

B：我就要打完了。

A：以后再打吧。

B：你要我现在干什么?

A：请为经理打这份报告，他打算分发给所有销售人员。

B：好的，先生。

3. **你打算从事什么职业?**

A：你说过你打算从事什么职业?

B：建筑。事实上我已经从事建筑业了，去年秋天我开始在同济大学学习。

A：你毕业后打算干什么呢?

B：搞建筑在中国大有可为，有许多工作可做，可以为人们建造桥梁、道路和高楼等等。

A：我在校时擅长于数学和美术。我想我对设计有点天赋。我想是我的个人素质使我选择了建筑，而没有选择诸如法律之类的工作。

4. **你白天做什么?**

A：早上好，李女士。我想问一些关于你日常工作的情况。我想你整天都很忙，是吗?

B：是的，我一整天都很忙。早上6点起床就去菜场买菜。

A：然后干什么呢?

B：早饭后7点我送儿子去上学，然后骑车去上班，我8点到办公室。

A：你在办公室做什么工作呢?

B：我通常打打信件，接接电话。

A：你出去吃午饭吗?

B：不，在办公室吃。

A：你几点下班？

B：大约 5 点。

A：晚上你做些什么事呢？

B：晚饭后我看一会儿报纸、杂志。我从来不看电视。我一天下来通常都很累了，所以 8 点左右就早早地上床了。

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

各位，下午好：

很高兴应邀就如何理智花钱这一话题与大家交流看法。

听说你们大部分人都是第一次离家独立生活。因此，最重要的是要学会仔细理财。你们必须做好月度预算。比如说，假设你父母每月给你 1,000 元钱。你应留 30%用于住宿，这一项是 300 元。吃也要用去 30%，因为这里吃的东西比较贵。

然后应有 10%用于交通，因为你出去时偶尔会需要乘出租车。书籍和报刊杂志也要用去 10%。

最后，你得留出 10%的钱用于娱乐。你们来这里的目的是学习，这点没错，但光学不玩儿并不是正确的学习方法。

这样算下来还剩余 100 元钱用于应急。

Passage 2

今天我们谈谈美国家庭一个的主要变化，这就是单亲家庭数量的增多。

现在大约 22%的美国儿童只和单亲住在一起，其原因之一是未婚妇女生孩子的人数增加。美国人口调查局最近公布了有关这方面情况的报告。这个报告调查了 18－44 岁从未结过婚的妇女。结果发现，她们中 24%的人至少有一个孩子。美国几乎有 400 万未婚母亲。

专家们正试图解释这类人增加的原因。过去女人结婚后就呆在家里照料孩子，她们靠丈夫的收入来维持家计。专家们认为，过去美国

社会许多妇女是被迫成婚的，父母希望女儿结婚，宗教团体、风俗和法律也是这么要求她们的。

做父亲的未婚男子的数目也在增加。人口调查局说，近12年来这类人数增加100%以上。现在，美国单亲家庭中14%是男子汉当家，其中大部分男人在婚姻破裂后开始照料孩子，但几乎25%的单身父亲没有结过婚。

Passage 3

ACME大西洋公司是一家有名气、有信誉的贸易公司。我们从35个国家的制造商直接进口，有时是按照我们公司要求的具体规格生产的。目前我们还向世界46个国家出口。

我们现在招聘工作热情高、愿意来我们百慕大办事处短期工作的人。我们只签3、6或9个月的短期合同。申请人国籍不限，但至少能熟练说写一种外语。

有从事进出口工作经验者优先，但经验不是必须的要求，因为公司在这方面会提供专门培训。最主要的要求是申请人团队意识强，能承受压力，可以用英语和另一种外语打电话，在需要的时候能加班。

公司目前有几个职位，虽然开始时公司最多只能签9个月的合同，但今后延长合同的机会非常高。

我们的薪金很高。我们将为您报销往返机票并提供膳宿，膳宿仅象征性地收费。

有意者请亲笔来信申请，并附上简历。

PART B

China's first astronaut Yang Liwei walked out of the re-entry capsule of the Shenzhou 5 Spaceship, smiling and waving to the recovery team in the grasslands in Gobi Desert, Inner Mongolia.

Yang has spent 21 hours in outer space, travelling more than 600,000 kilometres in the earth's orbit before Shenzhou 5 brought him back at 6:07 a.m. Beijing time October 16. Yang said he feels excellent after the 21-hour journey in outer space, the first by a Chinese.

After Yang went out of the capsule, physicians immediately conducted a physical check-up of Yang, which found him in good

conditions. At around 7:40 a.m., Yang was ferried by a military helicopter to Beijing, where a gala celebration party will be held.

At about 6:00 a.m., guided by the Beijing Aerospace Command and Control Center, the return capsule of Shenzhou 5 entered China's airspace. Several minutes later, the capsule landed safely in Northwest China's Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region, and Yang reported "conditions good".

Chinese Premier Wen Jiabao said in a congratulation message that China's first manned spaceflight has been a "complete success", which shall be written into the history of China's space program development.

UNIT 3

TRAFFIC AND ACCIDENTS

交通与事故

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

come about	skid	ambitious
jaywalk	swerve	retain
collide	accelerate	convenience
license	overtake	strive
provide	reverse	appreciate
LRT	fall a victim to	aviation
reliable	statistic	priority
stall		

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

1. 近年来，世界范围内的交通事故数量不断上升，引起了各国政府的高度重视。各国正想方设法改进交通设施，采取措施确保交通安全。
2. 随着科技的日新月异，新的城市交通工具也不断出现。现在，除了传统的公交车(bus)，出租车(taxi)，地铁(subway/underground train)以外，还出现了轻轨(light rail transportation)，磁悬浮列车(Maglev)等。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **Have you ever had an accident?**

   A: I heard the traffic accident in this area is on the rise recently.

   B: Yes. There was another traffic-related accident yesterday.

   A: Have you ever had an accident?

   B: Yes, but that was quite a long time ago.

   A: How did it come about?

   B: I tried to avoid a man jaywalking in the middle of the street, but collided into another car.

2. **How do you get a driving license?**

   A: More and more people in your country are learning how to drive a car.

   B: Yes. People are living better lives now, so they want to have their own cars.

   A: Is it difficult to get a driving license in China?

   B: I wouldn't say so, but it will take you a few months to get one.

   A: Do you have to pass the driving test?

   B: Yes. You can get a driving license provided you pass all the tests.

   A: How much is it to get a driving license?

   B: It varies. But not less than RMB¥3,500.

3. **How do you usually go to school?**

   A: How do you usually go to school?

   B: Usually by bus. But if I'm in a hurry, I take a taxi.

   A: Why don't you travel by LRT?

   B: There are no stations near my home.

   A: I see. Then, how do you think of the bus service?

   B: It's OK.

A: Could you give me any more details?
B: Well, it's not too bad. But sometimes it's not so reliable.
A: How much time do you spend on travelling every day?
B: Around one hour.
A: That's reasonable, isn't it?
B: Yes. But I hope things will improve for bus commuters.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

Riding a motorcycle is a popular way to travel. A motorcycle often has better acceleration than the fastest car. A motorcycle is easier to mend than a car; most parts of the engine are not too difficult to reach. A motorcycle is faster in heavy traffic. It's smaller than a car, so it can avoid traffic jams and can speed ahead while the cars wait. A motorcycle is cheaper to run — you need less petrol per mile for a motorcycle than for most cars.[1]

Take a look at any motorcycle magazine and you will have an idea of what motorcycling means to the fanatic. In some magazines there is a page where people advertise for something.[2] Here are two examples of these pages, taken from a British motorcycle magazine.

Passage 2

Ladies and gentlemen,

I would like to congratulate you on the organization of this demonstration.[1] I am most grateful to the organizing committee for their kind invitation to this event. Let me tell you that I am looking forward to experiencing for myself the vehicles on display here.

In Japan, we were told, about 9,000 people fall victim each year to fatal traffic accidents.[2] The EU has exactly the same concern as Japan to cut road traffic accidents.[3] Though things have im-

proved in recent years, the sad statistic is that roughly one in every 80 European citizens can expect to be killed on the roads. One in three will, at least once in his or her life, need hospital treatment after an accident.

The EU has begun an ambitious plan to improve road safety. Like you, we have realized that the number of accidents could be greatly reduced if the vehicles were fitted with collision warning devices.

Information and communication technologies promise safer, faster driving.[4] Japan's government has recognized the importance of developing intelligent transport systems. The EU also supports extensive research and technology development in this field.

Transport is a key feature of modern life. We all want to continue to develop transport systems that are economical, safe, and that protect our environment and quality of life. We all want to retain the benefits of the car as it provides freedom and convenience.[5] But we must all strive to do whatever possible to reduce road accidents.

I would like to close by wishing the demonstration every success.

Thank you very much.

Passage 3

Good afternoon. It is a pleasure to be with you here today. I always appreciate the opportunity to come home to be among friends.[1] Thank you for inviting me to talk about transportation safety issues, which are of importance to us all.

Major aviation accidents receive a lot of attention from the public and the media. As a result of that attention, and the public demand for the government and the industry to take actions necessary to ensure their safety, aviation accidents are rare events and we have the safest air transport system.[2]

The same is not true on our highways — the one transport system that each of us uses every day. Highway crashes currently account for more than 40,000 deaths annually in the United States.[3] Even more tragically, far too many of our nation's young people are

being killed needlessly on our highways every year.

1) More than 90,000 children, infants to teenagers, were killed in the 1990s in motor vehicle crashes and over 9 million children were injured.
2) Over 16,500 children under age 10 died in motor vehicle crashes, on average 33 children each week.
3) Over 57,500 children between ages 15 to 20 died in traffic crashes, more than 110 each week.

Motor vehicle crashes are the leading cause of death for young people aged 15 to 20. Even though this age group makes up only 7% of the driving population, they are involved in 14% of all traffic deaths.[4]

I hope each of you will join me in making highway safety your number one priority. Thank you again for inviting me to join you today in my hometown.

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

众所周知，便捷的交通是现代社会的重要特征之一。各国都十分重视道路建设。[1] 近年来，中国也加大了这方面的资金投入，公路建设因此有了很大的发展。[2] 从 1998 年到 2000 年，公路建设方面的投资连续三年超过人民币 2,000 亿元。到 2001 年，投资额超过了人民币 2,600 亿元。

自从我国实施西部大开发战略后，西部的公路建设也得到了加速发展。西部地区的公路投资每年增长 23%，为全国之首。[3] 从 1999 年开始，西部地区已建高速公路 3,300 公里。现在有 190 个城镇和 8,687 个村通了公路。去年，这一地区开通了第一条高等级国道，使之与沿海地区相连。[4]

今年，西部地区将继续成为公路建设的重点地区。总共将新建公路 4 万公里，其中高速公路 2,500 公里。另外，8 条省际公路也正在顺利建设之中。这 8 条公路投资人民币 1,200 亿元，预计 20 年完成。

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. Over 250,000 people have died in alcohol-related car-crashes since the drinking age was lowered.
2. Actions have been taken to check jaywalking.
3. The number of cyclists running traffic lights is on the decrease.
4. I'm afraid you've failed the driving test because you don't know the *Highway Code*.
5. The plane crashed two minutes after taking off, claiming 128 people.
6. The train derailed 35 miles short of London, resulting in 35 deaths.
7. A lot of drivers are fined because they don't pay attention to the speed limit.
8. More people have been leaving their cars in designated areas outside a city and catching a bus into the city center.
9. The policeman gave me a heavy fine and two points on my licence.
10. The government is encouraging people to use public transportation,

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. A motorcycle is cheaper to run — you need less petrol per mile for a motorcycle than for most cars. 开摩托车比较便宜——一辆摩托车每英里需耗费的汽油要比绝大多数汽车所耗费的都要少。

"than"在句中是连词，后跟省略句"for most cars"，与前面的"for a motorcycle"构成比较。

2. In some magazines there is a page where people advertise for something. 在一些杂志里，有一页是人们用来做广告的。

   advertise 意为"为……做广告，宣扬"。如：

   We advertise through the press. 我们通过报纸进行宣传。

   I advertised my intention to resign. 我宣扬自己要辞职。

Passage 2

1. I would like to congratulate you on the organization of this demonstration. 祝贺你们举办这样一次展示会。

   (1) congratulate 意为"向……祝贺，向……道贺(on)"。如：

   We congratulated him on having passed the examination. 我们祝贺他通过了考核。

   (2) demonstration 意为"演示，展示"。如：

   I appreciate the demonstration of the operation of this machine. 我很感谢这次机器操作示范。

   My products are on the list of the demonstration. 我的产品在展示的名单上。

2. In Japan, we were told, about 9,000 people fall victim each year to fatal traffic accidents. 我们知道，在日本，每年有约 9,000 人成为致命的交通事故的牺牲品。

   (1) fall victim to 意为"成为……的牺牲品"。如：

   He fell victim to the dagger of an assassin. 他死于刺客的刀下。

   (2) fatal 意为"致命的，毁灭性的"。如：

   This is a fatal accident. 这是一次致命的事故。

   She died of a fatal illness. 她死于致命的病症。

   It is fatal to enter any war without the will to win it. 不抱赢的希望参加战争，那是必死无疑的。

3. The EU has exactly the same concern as Japan to cut road traffic accidents. 欧盟与日本一样希望减少道路交通事故。

   句中"as"充当连词，后跟省略了谓语的"Japan"。

(1) concern 意为“关心，所关心的事”。如：

The managing director's only concern was how to improve the quality of their products. 总经理心里想的全是如何提高产品质量。

(2) cut 意为“减少，缩减”。如：

The company tended to cut train services. 公司想要减少火车班次。

4. Information and communication technologies promise safer, faster driving. 信息和通讯技术可使驾驶变得更加安全、迅疾。

promise 意为“预示，给予……希望”。如：

Early mist promises fair weather. 晨雾预示好天气。

This year promises to be another good one for harvests. 今年看来又是个丰收年。

5. We all want to retain the benefits of the car as it provides freedom and convenience. 我们都希望继续拥有汽车给我们提供的自由和便利。

或：汽车提供给我们自由和便利，我们都希望能继续拥有这些好处。

Passage 3

1. I always appreciate the opportunity to come home to be among friends. 我一直十分珍惜回家与朋友相聚的机会。

句中“to come home to be among friends”修饰“the opportunity”。

appreciate 意为“重视，赏识，认识到……的质量、显著性或重要性”。如：

They appreciated their freedom. 他们重视他们的自由。

2. As a result of that attention, and the public demand for the government and the industry to take actions necessary to ensure their safety, aviation accidents are rare events and we have the safest air transport system. 正是因为这种关注，再加上公众要求政府和航空业采取必要措施以确保安全，航空事故非常少见，空中交通系统也最安全。

(1) take actions 意为“采取行动”。如：

They took immediate remedial actions. 他们立即采取行动进

行补救。

(2) ensure 意为"确保"。如：

If you want to ensure that you get the diploma, you have to work harder and take all these curricula and pass them. 如果你想确保获得文凭，就得努力些，选修所有这些课程并通过考试。

Our precautions ensured our safety. 我们的预防措施保证了我们的安全。

3. Highway crashes currently account for more than 40,000 deaths annually in the United States. 现在，美国每年有4万多人死于公路事故。

(1) crash 意为"损毁，碰撞"，crush 意为"碾，弄碎，弄皱"。

Their car crashed into a guardrail. 他们的车撞上了护栏。

The airplane crashed over the ocean. 飞机在海洋上坠毁。

This machine crushes wheat grain to make flour. 这台机器把麦粒辗压成面粉。

She crushed the freshly ironed shirt. 她把新熨好的衣服弄皱了。

(2) account for 意为"占"。如：

This region accounts for a large part of usable timbers. 该地区提供了可用木材的很大一部分。

4. Even though this age group makes up only 7% of the driving population, they are involved in 14 percent of all traffic deaths. 虽然这个年龄段的人只占驾驶人口的7%，他们却占了所有交通死亡的14%。

involve 意为"包括，涉及"。如：

All the children were involved in the school play. 所有的孩子都参加了学校排练的戏剧表演。

This lesson involves a lot of work. 这一课需要做的工作有很多。

PART B

1. "各国都十分重视道路建设。"：All governments attach great importance to road construction.

2. "近年来，中国也加大了这方面的资金投入，公路建设因此有了很大的发展。"：China has also increased its input of funds in this field in recent years. Road construction has accordingly developed considerably.
   或：China has also increased its investment in this sphere in recent years, which contributes to the great development in road construction.
3. "西部地区的公路投资每年增长 23%，为全国之首。"：Investment in road construction in this region grew 23 percent annually, leading the nation in this respect.
   或：Investment in road construction in the western region increased by 23 percent annually, topping the whole country.
4. "去年，这一地区开通了第一条高等级国道，使之与沿海地区相连。"：The region's first high-grade national trunk highway, connecting the region to coastal areas, was completed last year.
   或：The region's first high-grade national trunk highway appeared in the area last year, linking the region to coastal areas.

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **你出过事故吗？**

   A：听说最近这一带的交通事故多了起来。
   B：是的。昨天又发生了一起交通事故。
   A：你出过事故吗？
   B：出过。但那是很久以前的事了。
   A：怎么发生的？
   B：有人在街中乱穿马路，我想让开他，却撞上了另外一辆车。

2. **你怎样才能取得驾驶执照？**

A：你们国家学开车的人越来越多了。
B：是的。现在人们的日子富裕了，就想着买私人轿车。
A：在中国取得驾驶执照困难吗？
B：不太困难，但得花几个月的时间。
A：要通过驾驶考试吗？
B：是的。要取得驾驶执照，就得通过所有的考试。
A：取得驾驶执照要花多少钱？
B：没有一个统一的标准，但不少于3,500元。

3. **你通常怎么去学校的？**
A：你通常怎么去学校的？
B：一般乘公交车去。但如果有急事，我就坐出租车。
A：为什么不乘轻轨呢？
B：我家附近没有轻轨。
A：原来这样。那么，你觉得公交车服务如何？
B：还行。
A：能说得具体一点儿吗？
B：没什么大问题。但有时不那么准时。
A：你每天路上要花多少时间？
B：一小时左右。
A：一小时不算太长，是吧？
B：是。但我希望对乘公交车上班的人来说，情况能有所改变。

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

骑摩托车旅行现在很时尚。通常，摩托车的加速性能要比最快的汽车还要好。摩托车比汽车更容易修理，其绝大部分的零件也不是很难得到。交通拥挤的时候摩托车要更快一些。它比汽车小，所以它能避开交通堵塞，当别的车辆还停在那里等待的时候，它能飞速向前。开摩托车比较便宜——一辆摩托车每英里需耗费的汽油要比绝大多数

汽车所耗费的都要少。

随便看哪本摩托车杂志，你就会知道对于摩托车迷来说骑摩托车意味着什么。在一些杂志里，有一页是人们用来做广告的。这儿就有两张，是从一本英国摩托车杂志上取下来的。

Passage 2

女士们，先生们：

祝贺你们举办这样一次展示会。非常感谢组委会的友好邀请。我要告诉你们的是，我期待着亲自体验这里展出的车辆。

我们知道，在日本，每年有约 9,000 人成为致命的交通事故的牺牲品。欧盟与日本一样希望减少道路交通事故。虽然近几年来情况有所改善，统计数字仍表明大约每 80 位欧洲市民中有 1 位会不幸死于车祸。⅓的人一生中至少有一次需要在事故后接受治疗。

欧盟已经开始了一项雄心勃勃的计划，旨在提高道路安全。像你们一样，我们也认识到了如果交通工具安装碰撞警告设施的话，事故数量会大幅下降。

信息和通讯技术可使驾驶变得更加安全、迅疾。日本政府已经认识到了发展智能交通系统的重要性。欧盟同样支持在这个领域进行广泛的研究和技术开发。

交通是现代生活的一个基本特征。我们都想继续发展经济、安全，同时能保护环境和生活质量的交通系统。我们都希望继续拥有汽车给我们提供的自由和便利。但我们必须尽力减少道路事故。

最后，预祝展示会圆满成功。

谢谢大家。

Passage 3

各位，下午好。很高兴今天在此与你们相聚。我一直十分珍惜回家与朋友相聚的机会。感谢你们邀请我谈交通安全这个对我们十分重要的问题。

公众和媒体都十分关注大的航空事故。正是因为这种关注，再加上公众要求政府和航空业采取必要措施以确保安全，航空事故非常少见，空中交通系统也最安全。

但我们每个人每天使用的公路的情况就不一样。现在，美国每年

有 4 万多人死于公路事故。更加可悲的是，每年都有许多年轻人毫无必要地死于公路事故。

1）在 20 世纪 90 年代，有 9 万多名儿童，从婴儿到十来岁的人，死于机动车车祸，其他 900 多万名儿童受伤。

2）16,500 多名 10 岁以下的儿童死于机动车车祸，平均每周 33 人。

3）57,500 多名 15 至 20 岁的青少年死于车祸，每周超过 110 人。

机动车车祸是 15 岁至 20 岁青少年的主要死因。虽然这个年龄段的人只占驾驶人口的 7%，他们却占了所有交通死亡的 14%。

我希望你们能与我一起将公路安全作为头等大事。再次感谢你们邀请我在家乡与你们相聚。

PART B

As you all know, convenient transportation is one of the important features of modern society. All governments attach great importance to road construction. China has also increased its input of funds in this field in recent years. Road construction has accordingly developed considerably. From 1998 to 2000, investment in road construction surpassed 200 billion *yuan* for three years running. In 2001, the investment exceeded 260 billion *yuan*.

Since the implementation of the western development strategy, road construction has been accelerated in West China. Investment in road construction in this region grew 23% annually, leading the nation in this respect. Since 1999, 3,300 km of express highways has been built in the region. Some 190 towns and townships and 8,687 villages now have access to road. The region's first high-grade national trunk highway, connecting the region to coastal areas, was completed last year.

West China will remain a prime region for road construction this year. In total, 40,000 km of new roads will be built, including 2,500 km of express highways. In addition, construction of eight inter-provincial roads is progressing smoothly. These roads are planned for completion in 20 years, with a total investment of 120 billion *yuan*.

UNIT 4

HUMANITY AND ENVIRONMENT

人类与环境

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

environmental protection	carbon dioxide
pollution	aerosol
pollutant	decibel
ecological environment	soundproof
air pollution	drought
water contamination	ice core
noise pollution	monsoon
industrial dust pollution	restore the reclaimed land to forest
soil erosion	the Kyoto Protocol
radioactive contamination	greenhouse
sewage disposal	

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

1. 保护环境是当今社会广泛关注的一个问题。人类对环境的污染包括大气污染、水污染、噪声污染、土壤侵蚀、工业粉尘污染、放射性污染等。
2. 一般认为空气中二氧化碳含量的增加会导致全球气温变暖，而空气中浮质微粒的增加会导致全球气温降低，这都是人类破坏环境

的结果。

3. 现在很多注重社会公益的企业在注重经济效益的同时，也开始关心环境保护问题，这是很有远见的。
4. 《京都议定书》是人类有史以来通过控制自身行动以减少对气候变化影响的第一个国际文书。1997 年 12 月，150 多个国家在日本京都就发达国家减少温室气体排放达成协议，即《京都议定书》。
5. 据美国最近的可靠资料表明，在今后 20 年可能有 20 个物种要遭到灭绝，有部分原因要归咎于人类。而事实上，人类自己的生存也依赖于其他物种的生存，所以这也不得不引起我们的重视。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **Plant and animal habitats will be changed by global warming.**

A: It is predicted that nearly one-third of the plant and animal habitats in the world will be significantly changed by global warming.

B: Yes, global warming has already killed off its first species.

A: An increase in the carbon dioxide content of the atmosphere will cause the earth to warm up.

B: So world leaders must give top priority to reducing levels of carbon pollution.

A: There's going to be a climate summit this November.

B: They must not miss the chance for preventing a catastrophe that could change the world.

2. **Asia is facing serious environmental problems.**

A: Have you read the report released by the United Nations on natural environment?

B: Yes, it says many Asian countries are facing serious environmental problems.

A: What is the most serious threat to the area?

B: The most serious threat to the area is the rapid shrinking of Asia's rain forests, especially in Malaysia, the Philippines

and Thailand.

A: According to a top U. N. official, as much as 70% of the rain forests in Asia will be gone in 20 years unless actions are taken now to save them.

3. **The pandas are facing a crisis.**

A: The pandas in the Wolong Reserve in Sichuan Province are facing a crisis. Have you heard the news?

B: Yes, of course I have. The newspapers and magazines have carried a few articles on the subject lately.

A: I never imagined that the flowering of bamboo could be a threat to the pandas.

B: Neither did I. I never knew that bamboo would wither and die after flowering.

A: It's a really serious matter, since pandas can't live without bamboo.

B: Yes, strict regulations must be set up to safeguard the rescue operations of the pandas.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

Unwanted sound, or noise, such as that produced by airplanes, traffic, or industrial machinery,[1] is considered a form of pollution.

Noise pollution is at its worst in densely populated areas.[2] It can cause hearing loss, stress, high blood pressure, sleep loss, distraction, and lost productivity.[3]

Measured in decibels, noise intensity can range from zero, the quietest sound the human ear can detect, to over 160 decibels[4]. Conversation takes place at around 40 decibels, a subway train is about 80 decibels, and a rock concert is from 80 to 100 decibels. The

intensity of a nearby jet taking off is about 110 decibels. Long lasting, high intensity sounds are the most damaging to hearing and produce the most stress in humans.

Solutions to noise pollution include adding soundproofing to doors, walls and ceilings, using ear protection and planting vegetation to absorb noise pollution.[5] Another effective way is to maintain a separation between residential areas and zones of excessive noise.

Passage 2

Ladies and gentlemen,

Please allow me to make a brief report on the climate change in the past decade.

The past decade has been the warmest for 1,000 years, which offer new evidence of global warming.

Global warming is a problem for discussion among scientists all over the world. For many inhabitants of Pacific Islands, it is now becoming a practical problem. While international science argues about global warming and climate change, low-lying Pacific Islands are already suffering coastal erosion and crop failures.[1]

The ice cores taken from the Tibetan plateau showed a record of at least eight major droughts. A seven-year dry spell[2] killed[3] more than 600,000 people.

Researchers said that the results offered significant evidence of climate change. And the evidence supported the idea that the warmer climate in recent decades was caused by human pollution.

Passage 3

Leading companies are increasingly[1] recognizing the value of environmental protection.

Silicon Valley is home[2] to many large companies. These companies are applying their innovation to finding environmental solutions as well as achieving surprising growth in economic activity.[3]

These businesses are working with environmental protection or-

ganizations to steadily lessen the impact of their manufacturing operations on the environment.

Many companies involve their employees in various environmental programs.[4] More than half of these companies provide employees with incentives to participate in these programs.

Their environmental focus is to support a sound and healthy development of economy.[5] They have realized that commercial success still needs to honor ethical values, respect employees and protect natural environment. They are closely related to each other.

Many companies have reduced emissions of gas pollutants and most of them are involved in recycling programs. The cooperation between the companies and environmental protection organizations works effectively.

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

水是一种珍贵的资源。

随着[1] 工农业的发展和新兴产业的出现，水的用量增大了，并且水的用途[2] 也增加了。水在水力发电工业中作为动力来源，在许多液态产品中作为原料等。

为了取得充足的水量，人们需要付出劳动开发水资源。解放以来，中国在黄河治理[3] 方面进行了大量的投资。[4] 遍布全国的水库和灌溉渠道都是劳动的结晶。

当对水资源的需求不断扩大的时候，[5]水正在变得越来越昂贵。

水是有限的资源。但一般人不容易认识到水资源是有限的这一问题。由于对水资源的过分开发利用，[6]全世界的水资源正在逐渐减少。现实迫使我们必须考虑当前和未来的水资源问题。

水资源是珍贵的。开发、利用和保护水资源已成为国民经济发展中的一个重要课题。

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. Humans are responsible for nearly every loss of species in the past few thousand years.

2. Humans have destroyed forests, spoiled agriculture and polluted the air, water and soil.
3. Our own survival depends on the survival of other species.
4. Low-lying Pacific Islands are suffering coastal erosion and crop failures.
5. If pollution continues to increase at the present rate, aerosols in the atmosphere will cause the onset of an ice age in about fifty years' time.
6. The reduction in woods areas has already led to increased flooding, water-shortages in the dry seasons and the loss of farmland.
7. As much as 70% of the woods in Asia will be gone in 20 years unless actions are taken now to save them.
8. As a developing country, China is confronted with the dual task of developing the economy and protecting the environment.
9. The US decision to withdraw from the international accord on climate change has caused international alarm.
10. The weather around the world is changing from mild weather to weather that is growing warmer every year.

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. ..., such as that produced by airplanes, traffic, or industrial machinery, ...: ……，比如飞机、交通车辆或工业机械产生的噪音，……

   traffic：在这句话里，应该译作“交通车辆”，而不宜单单译作“交通”。如：

这条道路上车辆很多。There was a lot of traffic on the road.
industrial machinery 应该译作"工业机械"，在这里 machinery 不同于 machine，machinery 是一个不可数名词，是机器的总称。

2. Noise is at its worst in densely populated areas. 在人口密集的地区噪音污染的影响最严重。
   at its worst：译作"处于最坏的情况下"。如：
   I'm at my worst in the morning. 我早上的时候反应最迟钝。
   This problem of late payment has showed him at his worst. 这个迟延付款的问题显示出他最差的一面。

3. It can cause hearing loss, stress, high blood pressure, sleep loss, distraction and lost productivity. 它可以导致人们失聪，精神紧张，血压升高，睡眠减少，注意力分散以及生产力降低。
   hearing loss/sleep loss ：loss 是名词，这两个词组可分别译作"失聪"和"睡眠减少"。而在 lost productivity 中，lost 是 lose 一词的过去分词形式，在句中用作定语修饰 productivity，可译作"生产力降低"。productivity 常用作不可数名词，译作"生产力，生产率"。

4. range from ... to ...：表示在一定的范围内变化、变动，常译作"从……到……"。如：
   Dress sizes range from petite to extra large. 服装尺码从小号到特大号不等。

5. Solutions to noise pollution include adding soundproofing to doors, walls and ceilings, using ear protection and planting vegetation to absorb noise pollution. 解决噪音污染的措施包括对门、墙和天花板进行隔音处理，使用耳朵保护装置，以及种植植物以吸收噪音。
   protection 一词虽常常用作不可数名词，译作"保护，保卫"，可是在这句话里，它是作为可数名词来用的，宜译作"保护装置"。如：protection against cold/fire 指的是"防寒用具"和"防火装置"。而此句中 vegetation 一词则是各类植物的总称，是一个不可数名词，可译作"植物，植被，草木"。如：
   Much of the region's native vegetation has been damaged by developers who are building hotels along the coast. 开发者在沿

海一带建造宾馆，该地区许多土生植被已遭到破坏。

Passage 2

1. …，low-lying Pacific Islands are already suffering coastal erosion and crop failures. ……，地势低洼的太平洋岛国已经在遭受海岸侵蚀和庄稼欠收的痛苦了。

   erosion 一词常用作不可数名词，译作“腐蚀，侵蚀”。如：

   soil erosion：土壤侵蚀；

   coastal erosion：海岸侵蚀。

   failure 在这里译作“失败”显然不妥，事实上在这里 failure 是个可数名词，意为“缺乏，不足”，和 crop 一词搭配，crop failure 常译作“歉收”。如：

   After three crop failures, the people face starvation. 连续三次歉收，人们面临着挨饿的危险。
2. spell 在这里用作名词，指的是 a short period of a particular type of weather（特定天气持续的一段时间）。如：

   In 1942 there was one of the longest cold spells ever recorded in the Pacific Islands. 太平洋岛国在 1942 年曾经经历过一次创记录的长久寒冷期。

   a hot spell 是指“一段持续高温的日子”。
3. kill 一词虽然简单，但如何译好它却值得我们注意，特别是在新闻报道中常会出现这个词，如果我们都译作“杀死”，显然十分牵强，我们常可译作“夺去……的生命，在……中丧生”。如：

   Her parents were killed in a plane crash. 她的父母在一次空难中丧生。

   The earthquake in Japan killed 10,000 people. 发生在日本的地震夺去了一万人的生命。

Passage 3

1. increasingly 这个副词常译作“日益，越来越……”。如：

   The argument became increasingly bitter. 他们的争论越来越激烈。

   Increasingly there is pressure on the council to reverse its deci-

sion. 要求市政会完全改变其决定的压力日益增大。

2. home 在不同的场合有不同的译法。在这里指的是“许多公司的总部所在地”。有的时候，home 还可译为“故乡，原产地，发源地”等。如：

   home for silk：丝绸之乡；

   China is my home, but I'm living in America. 中国是我的故乡，但我现在住在美国。

   America is the home of baseball. 美国是棒球的发源地。

3. These companies are applying their innovation to finding environmental solutions as well as achieving surprising growth in economic activity. 这些公司不但在经济活动方面取得了惊人的成绩，还将他们的创新精神用在解决环境问题上。

   注意连接词组 as well as 所连接的两个成分，是以前者为重点的，而 not only ... but also ... 所连接的两个成分，则以后者为重点，所以我们在翻译时要注意这一点。如：

   He has experience as well as knowledge. 相当于：

   He has not only knowledge, but also experience. 他既有知识，又有经验。

   Americans eat a lot of chicken, as well as fish and other foods from the sea. 美国人除了吃鱼和其他海产品外，还大量食用鸡肉。

4. Many companies involve their employees in various environmental programs. 许多公司使员工参与到各种环保计划中。

   involve ... in 及其被动形式 be involved in 常常含有贬义而译作“使卷入，牵涉”，但注意在这句话里，结合上下文，我们认为这儿的 involve ... in 是褒义，所以宜译作“使……参与”。如：

   Do we need to involve someone from the computer department at this stage in our discussions? 我们在讨论的这个阶段，是否要让电脑部的人参加？

5. sound 用作形容词时，意思很多，我们翻译时要特别注意。a sound and healthy development of economy 常译作“健康的经济发展”。注意下列一些译法：a sound advice：合理的建议；a sound person：可靠的人；a sound sleeper：睡得很熟的人。

PART B

1. “随着……”常可译作 with + n.(名词)，在这里 with 是介词，表示 at the same time as。
2. “用途”可译作 uses,这里 use 用作可数名词。如“具有多种用途的电子仪器”译作 an electronic device with many uses。
   当 use 作为“使用，应用”的意思时，它是不可数名词。如“学会使用这台电子仪器”应译为 learn the use of the electronic device。
3. “治理黄河” 可译作 harness the Yellow River 或 bring the Yellow River under control。harness 的意思是 control in order to use，用在这里十分恰当。
4. “解放以来，中国在黄河治理方面进行了大量的投资。”After liberation, China invested a lot in harnessing the Yellow River.
   “解放以来……”,注意如果我们用 since 一词，那么主句要用现在完成时。这句话也可译作 Since its liberation in 1949,China has invested a lot in ...
5. “当对水资源的需求不断扩大的时候……”一句，除了用 as 表示“当……的时候”，我们也可译作 With the increase of the need for water, ...
6. “由于对水资源的过分开发利用，……”
   “由于”这个词，我们可译作 due to 或 owing to; because of ;as a result of 等。thanks to 则表示“多亏，幸亏”的意思，用在这里不妥。

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **动植物栖息地将受到全球气候变暖的影响。**
   A：据预测，世界上将近⅓的动植物栖息地将受到全球气候变暖的显著影响。
   B：是的，全球变暖已灭绝了地球上最初的物种。

A：大气中二氧化碳含量的增加将导致全球变暖。
B：各国首脑必须首先考虑如何减轻二氧化碳污染。
A：今年 11 月有个全球气候峰会。
B：他们必须抓住这个机会以防止足以改变世界的灾难发生。

2. **亚洲正面临着严重的环境问题。**
   A：你读过联合国发布的关于自然环境的那份报告了吗？
   B：是的，它说很多亚洲国家正面临着严重的环境问题。
   A：对这一地区最大的威胁是什么？
   B：对这一地区最大的威胁是亚洲热带雨林的迅速减少，特别是在马来西亚、菲律宾及泰国。
   A：按照一位联合国高级官员的说法，如果不采取措施挽救它们，亚洲 70%的热带雨林将在 20 年后消失。

3. **大熊猫正面临着危机。**
   A：四川卧龙保护区的大熊猫正面临着危机，你听说这个新闻了吗？
   B：当然听说了，最近报纸杂志登载了一些有关这个问题的文章。
   A：我从未想到竹子开花会对大熊猫造成威胁。
   B：我也没想到。我从来不知道竹子开花后就会干枯、死亡。
   A：这可真是个严重的事啊。因为离开了竹子，大熊猫无法生活。
   B：是的，必须建立严格的规章制度来确保援救大熊猫的行动。

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

人们不希望听到的声音，或称噪音，比如飞机、交通车辆或工业机械产生的噪音，被认为是一种污染。

在人口密集的地区噪音污染的影响最严重。它可以导致人们失聪，精神紧张，血压升高，睡眠减少，注意力分散以及生产力降低。

按分贝计算，噪音强度可以从零，这是人耳所能听到的最低声

音，到160分贝以上。人交谈的声音强度一般为40分贝，地铁的噪音强度约为80分贝，摇滚音乐会的声音强度在80到100分贝之间。一架在附近起飞的喷气机的声音强度大约是110分贝。长期高强度的声音对听力损害最大，给人类带来最为紧张的情绪。

解决噪音污染的措施包括对门、墙和天花板进行隔音处理，使用耳朵保护装置，及种植植物以吸收噪音。另一个有效方法是使居住区与过量噪音区分开。

Passage 2

女士们，先生们：

请允许我向各位简要介绍一下在过去10年里的气候变化。

过去的10年是千年来最温暖的10年，这为全球气候变暖提供了新的证据。

对于全球变暖问题，全世界的科学界都在进行探讨。而对于许多太平洋岛国的居民来说，这已成为一个非常现实的问题。就在国际科学界对全球变暖问题和气候变化争论不休的时候，地势低洼的太平洋岛国已经在遭受海岸侵蚀和庄稼歉收的痛苦了。

在青藏高原取得的冰芯记录了至少8次大旱灾。其中一段长达7年的干旱时期夺取了超过60万人的生命。

研究者们认为这一成果为气候变化提供了意义重大的证据。这一成果也进一步证实了近几十年的气候变暖是由人类污染造成的看法。

Passage 3

大公司正日益意识到环境保护的价值。

硅谷是许多公司的总部所在地。这些公司不但在经济活动方面取得了惊人的成绩，还将他们的创新精神用在解决环境问题上。

这些公司与环境保护组织进行合作以逐步减少其生产作业对环境的影响。

许多公司使员工参与到各种环保计划中。其中，半数以上的公司为参加这些计划的员工提供了奖励。

他们的环境目标是为健康的经济发展提供支持。他们已经意识到商业上的成功仍然需要尊重道德价值，尊重雇员并保护自然环境。他们彼此是密切相联的。

很多公司减少了汽油污染物的排放量并且大多数公司都积极参与到再循环利用计划中去。公司与环保组织之间的合作十分有效。

PART B

Water is a kind of precious resource.

With the development of industry and agriculture and the emergence of new trades, the demand for water consumption has increased. Besides, the uses of water have also increased. For example, water is an energy resource in the hydro-electric power industry as well as a material in the manufacturing of many liquid products.

In order to obtain enough water, people need to labour to exploit water resources. After liberation, China invested a lot in harnessing the Yellow River. Reservoirs and irrigation channels all over the country are the fruits of the labor involved.

As the need for water increases, water is becoming more and more expensive.

Water is a limited resource, but it is hard for ordinary people to realize this fact. Due to the excessive exploitation of water resources, the world's supply of water is decreasing. The reality forces us to be concerned with present and future water resources.

Water resources are precious. The exploitation, use and conservation of water resources has become an important issue in the development of national economy.

UNIT 5

SOCIAL PROBLEMS

社会问题

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

lottery
stock market
stock
shareholder
life insurance
policy
juvenile delinquency/crime
violence
single mother
homosexuality
maltreat
abortion
drug addict
hijack
black market
murder
suicide
economic/political/energy/food crisis
inflation
commercial housing
nuclear weapon
senior citizen
life span

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

1. 青少年犯罪是一个十分值得关注的社会问题，特别是在美国发生一系列校园枪击事件后，我们不得不深思：究竟是什么使得这些孩子堕入暴力犯罪的深渊。
2. 随着离婚率的增长，单亲家庭越来越普遍。可是单亲妈妈们却承受着巨大的经济、社会和精神压力，甚至过早地死亡。这个问题，社会是否给予了足够的重视？
3. 人口增长、通货膨胀、油价上升、环境恶化，这种种都会导致食物危

机，会引起两极的继续分化，社会的不稳定，这是我们必须关注的社会问题。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **It was an impulse buy.**

A: I was just walking around in the downtown area when I decided to buy a lottery ticket. It was an impulse buy.

B: A lottery ticket? The chance of winning the lottery is ten million to one. It's nearly impossible.

A: Don't be so negative. Aren't you always trading shares on the stock market? Stocks and lottery tickets are almost the same.

B: They are not the same. I consider myself to be a shareholder in every company I invest in.

A: How much money do you spend on a stock?

B: Over $1,000. But at least the bet is on an organization rather than sheer luck.

2. **I opened a life insurance policy yesterday.**

A: Yesterday I opened a life insurance policy with the People's Insurance Company.

B: Why did you do that? I prefer to save my money. Your generation tends to spend most of your income on silly things.

A: Well, I have a good job now, but when I retire the income will be very low. That's the reason why I bought life insurance. This way I can live more comfortably when I'm old.

B: Oh, don't be silly. The only one who benefits is the insurance company. Be careful on how you spend your money.

A: When I retire, I can claim a monthly allowance under the insurance policy, and it's also in case something happens to me.

B: But I still can't agree with you on that.

3. **What explains the growing trend toward delayed childbearing?**

A: Do you know what explains the growing trend toward delayed childbearing?

B: Well, I think the high divorce rate is making young people think twice about starting a family.

A: Yes, and many young couples want to be more financially secure before having children.

B: Furthermore, more married women prefer to devote time to their careers rather than have a baby.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

Good afternoon, ladies and gentlemen. I'd like to thank you for inviting me to make some comments on the subject of juvenile crime[1].

It is obvious that one of the causes of juvenile crime is an unsatisfactory home background. The father or even sometimes both parents may be involved in some form of criminal activity, and this inevitably has a serious impact on[2] the growing child[5]. The child takes conflict with the authorities for granted.[3] The parents may be on bad terms[4] with each other or even get divorced and this puts a great emotional strain on children.

Another cause of teenage crime may be boredom or discontent. Some spoilt middle-class youths[5] regard themselves as revolutionaries of society. They find a certain fulfillment in robbing banks and shops, taking part in gang wars[6].

Loneliness and alienation in our schools are not new. President Bush called the shooting at the high school in California "a disgraceful act". I think the shooting is a desperate cry for help. Many "young shooters" are indeed isolated, bullied and humiliated at schools.

Surely by now we know that social alienation can sometimes produce violence toward oneself or toward others. At least we

should learn to listen to them and make friends with them, otherwise they may seek some kind of outlet in violence.

Passage 2

According to a new research, single mothers are more likely to[1] die prematurely[2] than those who are living with a partner.

The majority of single mothers suffer from more financial hardship[3] and social pressure than couples.

In Britain nearly three million children live in a single-parent family. Single parents' incomes are less than half of those of two-parent families.

The stress of single mothers and the lack of emotional support should not be underestimated[4]. These mothers have to act as father and mother and have to make all the decisions themselves. Moreover, they may not have good relationship with their ex-partners, which can also cause problems.

A closer analysis shows that single mothers are particularly at the risk of[5] suicide, violence and alcohol-related death.

Passage 3

Mr Chairman,

Thank you for giving me the opportunity to speak at this seminar on the topic of the World Food Crisis.

As everyone knows, we have the problem of overpopulation[1] and the rapidly increasing world population. This is a very serious problem but of course it is not the only problem. Inflation[2] and the increased cost of food are making it impossible for the poor to buy enough food to live on.

Recently there have been great increases in the cost of petroleum, which have also had a great effect on the price of food. Both fuel and fertilizer are products of petroleum. An increase in the cost of fuel makes it more expensive for a farmer to run his farm machinery.[3] And if fertilizer costs more, it costs him more to fertilize

his fields. If the farmer is to make a living, he must pass these increased costs along to[4] the customer.

The weather can also be a problem in connection with food production. The weather around the world is changing from mild weather to weather that is not suitable for growing crops.

And there are countries who are opposed to population control because of religious beliefs. Food crisis will be difficult to solve on a worldwide basis and it takes time[5].

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

老龄问题是最近几年才提出来的。但是，老年人的问题不是现在才有的。自有文明以来，任何社会都有这个问题。[1] 中华民族有着敬老的传统。当今，我们要解决老龄问题[2]，绝不仅仅是物质待遇[3] 方面的问题，而是要认识到它与社会政治、经济、文化以及整个社会发展的关系。

随着经济和社会的发展，人的寿命[4] 越来越长，老年人口还要不断增加。不很好地研究，拿出对策[5]，就要影响国民经济的发展和社会的安定。另一方面，老年人自身还有许多问题需要解决。老年人对精神生活[6] 的要求越来越迫切。老年人的问题需要依靠全社会的力量才能解决。[7]

一方面，老年人需要国家、社会、家庭的关怀和照顾，同时，老年人仍然是社会建设的重要力量。[8] 不论是国内还是国外，过去还是现在，老年人的作用都是不可忽视的。老年人对人类社会发展起着重要作用。[8]

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. Capital punishment is surely a cruel but necessary punishment.
2. Most retired workers are no longer secure with a company's pension and it's really hard for them to deal with the continuous rise in the cost of living.
3. Women still do not get the recognition they deserve for their efforts.
4. The scientists were trying to say that limiting possession of the

atomic bomb to a few countries was impossible.

5. It is no longer a secret that even in some elementary schools, children have easy access to drugs.
6. Whether prisoners should be used for human experiments is not only a legal question but also a moral problem.
7. Cheating on tests repeatedly is risky and self-defeating.
8. More and more universities are creating loan plans to aid students from low-income families.
9. Oriental religions seem to be attracting thousands of westerners.
10. There is an urgent national need for more green land.
11. Men may deny it but, even so, women will soon be able to compete with them in most fields.

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. juvenile crime 是指"青少年犯罪";"青少年罪犯"是 juvenile criminal 或 juvenile offender;"青少年法庭"是 juvenile court; a juvenile correctional centre 就应该译作"青少年教养中心"。如:

   There has been a big increase in juvenile crime (juvenile delinquency) in the last few years. 最近几年青少年犯罪大幅度增长。

2. have a serious impact on 意为"对……有着/造成严重的影响"。相似的词组有 have a great impact on, have quite an impact on 等。如:

   The anti-smoking campaign had quite an impact on young

people. 禁烟运动对青年人有着不小的影响。

3. take ... for granted 常译作"认为……理所当然"，有的时候也以 take it for granted that ... 的句型出现。如：

   Most young people take central heating for granted because they've never lived without it. 大多数青年人把中央供暖系统视为理所当然，因为他们的生活从来没有离开过它。

   这句话中，take ... for granted 的宾语是 conflict with the authorities，这里的 conflict 用作名词，conflict with ... 译作"与……的抵触、冲突、对抗"。

4. be on bad terms 译作"关系不好"。类似的词组还有：be on good/equal/the same/even/familiar/friendly/intimate terms with sb. 与某人的关系好/地位平等/条件相同/不相上下/很熟/关系友好/关系密切。如：

   We are not on very good terms with the people next door. 我们同隔壁邻居的关系不太好。

5. growing child 中，growing 是现在分词作定语，修饰 child，现在分词作定语一般表示主动的，正在进行的意思，所以译为"正在成长中的孩子"。

   spoilt middle-class youths 中，spoilt 是过去分词作定语，修饰 middle-class youths。过去分词作定语一般表示被动的意思，所以译作"被宠坏了的中产阶级家庭的青少年"。

6. gang wars 译作"集体斗殴"或"打群架，火并"。

   gang 一词常含贬义，意为 a group of criminals or of people, esp. young men who often cause trouble。如：

   the Gang of Four：四人帮；

   Gang warfare is (Gang wars are) usually drug-related. 打群架/集体斗殴常常和毒品有关。

Passage 2

1. be more likely to 可译作"可能性更大"或"更有可能，更倾向于"，主语常常为人。如：

   I'm likely to be very busy tomorrow. 明天我可能会很忙。

2. die prematurely 是指"过早死亡"。pre- 是一个前缀，意为"在……

之前，在……之先”，所以 premature 是指“过早的，时机未成熟的”。如：

a premature birth/baby/aging 可译作“早产/早产儿/早衰”。

3. financial hardship 是指“经济困难”，hardship 在这里是个不可数的抽象名词，常译作“艰难，困苦”。如：

   suffer great hardship：经历千辛万苦；

   The 1930's was a time of high unemployment and economic hardship in much of the United Kingdom. 30 年代的英国，许多地方遭受着高失业和经济困难。

4. underestimate 译作“低估，对……估计不足”。under-作前缀，表示“不足，过低”，如：underdeveloped 落后的，发展不充分的；underdone 未熟透的；underemployed 就业不充分的；underfed 没有喂饱的。如：

   One shouldn't underestimate the difficulties of getting all the parties to the conference table. 人们不应该低估要使所有党派都坐下来进行谈判的困难。

   underestimate 的反义词是 overestimate，意为“高估”。

   另外，我们常说“不能低估”，相应的英文表达方式应为 shouldn't be underestimated，而不是 can't be underestimated。如：

   The role played by her husband in her success shouldn't be underestimated. 她丈夫在她的成功中所起的作用不可低估。

5. be at the risk of 意为“面临……的危险，冒……的险”，它的译法和 at risk 是不一样的，at risk 译作“有危险的”。如：

   The disease is spreading, and all children under five are at risk. 此病正在蔓延，所有 5 岁以下儿童均有危险。

   He saved my life at the risk of losing his own. 他冒着自己的生命危险救了我的命。

Passage 3

1. overpopulation：译作“人口过剩”。over-也是一个前缀，和 under-相对，表示“过分的，过度的”。如：overcharge 要价过高；overcrowded 过度拥挤；overdevelop 过度发展等等。
2. inflation：这是个不可数名词，译作“通货膨胀”。control/curb

inflation意为“控制通货膨胀”。如：

The grant will be increased in line with the 3% inflation expected this autumn. 补助金将随着今秋预期的3%通货膨胀率而增加。

inflation 的反义词是 deflation，译为“通货紧缩，通货收缩”。

3. run 一词意思很多，当它用作及物动词和 machinery 搭配时，可译作“操作机器，开动机器”。如：

They ran the car downhill. 他们把车往山下开。

4. pass ... along to：这里译作“把……转嫁给、转嫁与”，意为 shift the responsibility upon others。

5. it takes time：这里 take 意为“花费(时间)，需要”。如：

He always takes too much time to work. 他总是花过多的时间工作。

Learning the skills of salesmanship takes time. 学会推销技术要花许多时间。

PART B

1. “自有文明以来，任何社会都有这个问题。”

这个“有”的意思是“面对，面临着”。所以我们可译作 be confronted with, be faced with。如：

回到办公室，他面临的是一大堆工作。When he returned to his office he was confronted with a large pile of work.

be confronted with 通常指“面对危险、难题”等。

2. “敬老”和“老龄问题”。

可分别译作 respect the elders 和 the problem of seniors。elders 和 seniors 都含有尊敬的意思，是“长辈，长者，老年人”的委婉说法，符合这篇文章的整个语气。如：

我们应该遵循我们长辈的建议。We should follow the advice of our elders.

Discounts are available for seniors(senior citizens). 老年人可享受打折的优惠。

3. “物质待遇”。

可译作 material treatment，同样“物质财富/物质利益/物质生活/

物质文明"：可译作 material wealth/material benefits/material life/material civilization。

4. "寿命"。
   可译作 lifespan 或 span of life。如："我们短暂的一生"可译作 our brief span of life。span 是指"一段时间"。
5. "拿出对策"。
   这里"拿出"是指"提出，想出办法、主意"，所以我们可译作"come up with"。如：
   她提出绝妙的办法，解决了问题。She came up with a brilliant scheme and settled the problem.
6. "精神生活"。
   可译作 spiritual life，同样"精神财富/精神枷锁/精神面貌/精神文明"：可译作 spiritual values/spiritual shackles/spiritual outlook/spiritual civilization。
7. "老年人的问题需要依靠全社会的力量才能解决"。
   注意这里强调"全社会的力量"，所以在翻译时我们用"only + 部分倒装"的句型，这里尤其要注意语序问题，only 一词放在句首作强调时主句要部分倒装。
8. "是……的重要力量"，"扮演……的重要角色"，"起着……的重要作用"。
   都可译作 play an important part/role in。

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **这是一时冲动买的。**
   A：我在市区逛街时决定买张彩票试试。这是一时冲动。
   B：一张彩票？赢的机会是一千万分之一，几乎等于不可能。
   A：别那么消极。你不是也常做股票吗？股票和彩票几乎一样。
   B：它们不一样。我把自己看作是我参与投资的每家公司的股东。

A：每种股票你要花多少钱？

B：1,000 多美元。但至少我是把赌注押在一个机构上，这要比纯粹碰运气好。

2. **昨天我买了一份人寿保险。**

A：昨天我买了一份人民保险公司的人寿保险。

B：为什么呢？我更愿意存钱。你们这一代往往滥用钱。

A：我现在有一份很好的工作，可到退休时收入就会很低了，所以我买人寿保险，这样到我老了，我可以生活得更自在一些。

B：噢，别傻了，得益的只有保险公司罢了。你得仔细想想怎么用钱才行。

A：等我退休了，每个月能根据保险契约提钱，而且还能应付意外情况。

B：但我还是不能苟同。

3. **是什么原因导致了晚育趋势？**

A：你知道是什么原因导致了晚育趋势吗？

B：嗯，我想高离婚率使得年轻人在开始建立一个家庭之前要三思。

A：是的，而且现在很多年轻夫妇在有孩子之前希望经济上更有保证。

B：再者，越来越多的已婚妇女更愿把时间投入到事业中去而不是生孩子。

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

下午好，女士们，先生们。我感谢各位邀请我在青少年犯罪这个问题上说几句。

显而易见，青少年犯罪的一个原因是不能令人满意的家庭背景。父亲，有的时候甚至父母双方都卷入某种犯罪行为中，这不可避免地

会对成长中的孩子造成严重的影响。孩子把同政府当局的对抗冲突当作是理所当然的事。父母双方彼此关系可能不好甚至离婚，这给孩子带来很大的感情压力。

青少年犯罪的另一个原因可能是出于无聊和不满。一些被宠坏了的中产阶级家庭的青少年把自己视作社会的变革者。通过抢劫银行、商店，参加集体斗殴，他们得到一定的满足。

孤独与疏远在我们的学校里已不是什么新鲜事了。布什总统将发生在加利福尼亚州中学里的枪击事件称为“无耻的行为”。我认为那次枪击事件是一种拼命寻求帮助的呼救。很多“校园杀手”确确实实在学校被孤立、欺侮和羞辱。

现在我们当然懂得，社会的疏远有时会引起对自己或他人的暴力行为。至少，我们可以学着去倾听他们，和他们成为朋友，否则他们会通过暴力以求发泄。

Passage 2

根据最新研究，单身母亲与那些有伴的母亲相比，过早死亡的可能性更大。

大多数单身母亲所遭受的经济困难和社会压力要超过双亲家庭。

在英国，大约有 300 万儿童生活在单亲家庭里。单亲家庭的收入还不到双亲家庭的一半。

单身母亲的精神压力以及感情支柱的缺失都是不可低估的。这些母亲不得不既当爹，又当娘，所有的决定都得自己来作。而且，她们与从前伴侣的关系可能不是很好，这也会产生问题。

进一步的分析显示单身母亲尤其会面临自杀、暴力以及酗酒致死的危险。

Passage 3

主席先生：

能有机会在研讨会上以“世界粮食危机”为题进行发言，我谨向您表示感谢。

众所周知，我们面临着人口过剩以及世界人口快速增长的问题。这是一个十分严重但不是惟一的问题。通货膨胀以及粮食成本的增长使得那些穷人不可能购买足够他们赖以生存的食物。

最近，石油成本有了大幅度的提高，这对粮食价格同样产生了很大的影响。燃料和肥料都是石油的产物。燃料成本提高使得农民操作农用机器的费用更高了。并且如果肥料成本提高，他给农田施肥花费也就更高。如果农民要生存，他就必须将这些增加的成本转嫁到消费者身上去。

天气同样也是一个与粮食生产有关的问题。全球的天气状况正在发生变化，从原来温和的天气转变成不适于作物生长的天气。

并且还有一些国家由于宗教信仰反对控制人口。粮食危机要在世界范围得以解决是很困难的，它需要一定的时间。

PART B

The question of old age has been raised only in recent years, yet it has long existed. Ever since the dawn of civilization, society has been confronted with this problem. The Chinese nation has the tradition of respecting the elders. Today to solve the problem of caring for the elderly is not merely a matter of providing material benefit for them; we must realize the relationship between the elderly and society's political, economic and cultural implications, as well as its relationship with the development of society as a whole.

With the development of society and economy, the lifespan of man has become longer, and the elder population is continuously increasing. If we do not study the problem comprehensively and come up with a counter-measure, the development of the national economy and the stability of society will be affected. On the other hand, many problems concerning the old must be solved. The aged have increasingly urgent demands for a spiritual life. Only by depending on the strength of the whole society can the problem of the aged be settled.

On the one hand, the elderly people need the care and love of the family, society and country. On the other hand, they still play an important part in the construction of our society. Whether at home or abroad, at present or in the past, the function of senior citizens is not negligible. The elderly people play an important role in the development of human society.

UNIT 6

SCIENCE, TECHNOLOGY AND PROGRESS

科技与进步

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

life sciences	geology	personal computer
physical sciences	anthropology	Microsoft Windows
social sciences	psychology	Internet
scientist	criminology	download
technologist	archaeology	Web site
technician	copy file	on line
mechanic	floppy disk	surf
biology	crash	information highway
zoology	operating system	China Telecom
botany	software	gene
anatomy	ink jet	patent
physiology	laser printer	clone
ecology	upgrade	

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

1. 在当今社会，计算机的运用越来越广泛。计算机的运算速度与储存信息的能力与日俱增，软件和硬件技术更是日新月异，所以有关计算机的基本知识是我们必须具备的。

2. 电子商务以强势姿态跨进了新千年。根据波士顿咨询公司的信息，到 2003 年世界范围的企业对企业的电子贸易总额将达到 2.8 万亿美元。
3. “克隆”可称为是遗传科学的“革命”，1997 年通过细胞核置换进行了绵羊多利的克隆，但很多国家认为把这种技术用于人的克隆上，在道德上是不可接受的。
4. 现在，已有科学家看到了 21 世纪最引人瞩目的技术，如机器人、基因工程制造出的生物以及纳米机器人等，由于可以自我复制可能对人类造成巨大威胁。
5. 切尔诺贝利是环境战中最著名的战场，现在人们已发现了一种处理危险有毒废弃物的新途径——生物还原法及植物还原法，这将极其有助于环保。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **Now, you can say that you're on line.**

   A: I took your advice and set up my Internet account.

   B: Good. Now, you can say that you're on line. Did you get a free e-mail account?

   A: Yes. This is my e-mail address. Now, I can talk to my friend Lisa in New York.

   B: You can even send her an e-mail with your picture as an attachment.

   A: Technology is still evolving. I hear plans are being made to install an e-mail system in cars.

   B: That would mean I could e-mail you while I drive or take a taxi. Oh, that's great.

2. **I've read about robots in a popular science book.**

   A: I've read about robots in a popular science book. Do you know robots are of different sizes and shapes?

   B: Yes. Some are as small as matchboxes, or even smaller, but others are as large as cabinets.

A: Robots do the most dangerous and boring work in factories.

B: And there is a kind of robot which can open and close doors automatically.

A: It seems that a robot is more willing to be at your service.

B: But they can't take the place of man. If man didn't programme the robot, it couldn't do anything.

3. **Do you know anything about nuclear technology?**

A: Do you know anything about nuclear technology?

B: Yes, it means atomic bombs, hydrogen bombs, nuclear power stations, etc.

A: A few days ago, I went to an exhibition on China's achievements in the civil application of nuclear technology.

B: It must be an eye-opener to you.

A: Of course. Nuclear technology is being widely applied in industry, agriculture and medicine.

B: Oh, it can do wonders. Please tell me where the exhibition is. I am going to visit it, too.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

Mr Chairman,

Thank you for giving me the opportunity to speak at this seminar on the topic of "E-commerce — leader of modern business".

E-commerce has continued its powerful momentum[1] into the new millennium. The old idiom "the only constant is change" has now become "change or become extinct[2,3]".

Amazon.com which is an online retailer, Yahoo, an Internet portal, Sina.com (Chinese Internet Portal) and many others have become the new leaders of modern business.

Traditional corporations such as IBM and Intel are making comprehensive changes to their business models[4] in order to succeed in the 21st century business. This is now a necessity. Companies must make both Internet technology and processes a part of their core business. I think total integration[5] is the key to success.

Passage 2

Britain is to[1] become the first country in the world to ban human cloning under government plans. This is to ease public fears about genetic technology.

The Secretary of State for Health[2] announced that he would bring forward legislation[3] to outlaw the practice[4]. Although Britain aims to become a world leader in the genetic revolution, no progress can be made unless strict boundaries are set to reassure the public.

Ministers have been particularly disturbed by reports that scientists in Italy and America are preparing to clone a baby. There's more than just knowledge at stake[5], after all — there's money.

The Department of Health now believes the only way to ensure that human cloning never takes place is to ban it.[6]

By introducing legislation banning the practice of human cloning, the British Government hopes to send out a signal to the international community that the science is morally unacceptable.

Passage 3

I'm glad to be here to talk to you about what we have achieved in nuclear waste management[1].

At power plants across the world, thousands of tons of spent nuclear fuel are waiting for safe disposal. The greatest problem in nuclear waste management is that many of the facilities fail to prevent leakage. As a result, the ground water, surface water, soil, and air are all at the risk of contamination[2].

We have recently developed a special kind of coating to prevent leakage into the environment.

We also developed advanced robots to apply the coating in the dangerous working conditions instead of humans.

Another problem is cost. By using conventional technologies[3], it will cost billions of dollars in US alone to deal with nuclear waste. Is there a real alternative that is cheaper and safer? Well, there is.

We have carried out research on using plants in environmental clean-up. As we all know, plants can take up pollutants and then release them into the atmosphere, so this is really an effective way of environmental protection.

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

近5年来,[1]中国政府采取了一系列有利于科技改革与发展的政策举措,取得了一系列成就。[2]中国科技事业进入到历史上最好的发展时期。

第一,科技投入取得历史性突破[3],科技工作的环境和条件得到明显改善。科技投入成为国家创新的基础条件[4]和推动科学技术跨越发展的重要保证。

第二,科技体制改革取得实质性进展,科技与经济脱节的问题基本得以解决。

第三,高新技术产业化成效显著,成为促进经济结构调整[5]的重要力量。

第四,中国在农业、工业和社会可持续发展[6]等科技工作方面成效显著,在产业技术研究方面取得了一系列重大突破。

第五,全方位,多层次的国际科技合作局面基本形成[7]。中国对外科技合作服务于经济建设、社会发展和国家整体外交的作用日益突出。

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. I like surfing the web.
2. It will take 20 minutes to download this graphic file.
3. This new Pentium IV processor is powerful.
4. Genetic research should be fostered and developed to offer revolutionary treatment and therapies.

5. The speed and storage capacity of a computer is increasing every day.
6. Information technology is fashioning a woven world.
7. In the modern technological world, the sea offers many resources to help mankind survive.
8. Oil and gas exploration have existed for decades, while large quantities of minerals still exist on the ocean floor ready to be mined.
9. There is no doubt that many scientific and technological developments will take place in the near future.
10. Microwaves that transmit television signals always travel in a straight line.

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. powerful momentum 译作"强势姿态"。momentum 在这里是不可数名词，意为"势头，力量"。如：

   The play loses momentum by its half-way stage. 这部戏剧演到一半就失去了势头。

   The firm has been growing rapidly, but you can't keep that kind of momentum up forever. 这个公司发展很快，但你无法永远保持这种势头。
2. change or become extinct：在这里，or 的意思是 if not，即"否则，要不然"。为了强调"变化"的重要性，我们译作"要么……要么……"。
3. extinct 这个形容词没有比较级和最高级形式，它的意思是 no

longer existing，即“消灭的，灭绝的，灭亡的”。如：

There is concern that the giant panda will soon become extinct.
有人担心大熊猫即将绝种。

4. business model：这里 model 一词，宜译作“模式”，所以 business model 译作“商业模式”。如：

No model of the economy can predict when the next recession will be. 没有经济模式可以预测下次经济萧条会是什么时候。

Computer models have been used to predict long-term climatic changes. 计算机模式被用来预测长期气候变化。

5. total integration：注意是 integration 不是 integrity。integration 是一个不可数名词，意为“结合，整体，综合”，所以在这里我们不妨译成“一体化”。

Passage 2

1. be to：在这里表示一种计划、可能性，是还未发生但列入计划、打算之内的事，所以我们译作“将”。如：

The train is to reach the destination in half an hour. 半小时内，火车将抵达终点站。

2. the Secretary of State for Health：注意 Secretary 一词的译法。在英国，the Secretary of State 是指英国国务大臣；在美国，the Secretary of State 是指美国国务卿。所以在英国，“内务/外交大臣”分别被称为 the Home/Foreign Secretary，“教育/卫生大臣”可以被称为 the Secretary of State for Education/Health。

3. bring forward legislation：bring forward 是指“提出（计划、议案、立法）等”。legislation 是一个不可数名词，是指“立法，法律”。如：

The government has introduced legislation to limit fuel emissions from cars. 该政府已通过立法来限制汽车燃料的排放。

4. outlaw the practice：注意 outlaw 是指 make it illegal and unacceptable，即“宣布为不合法”，所以我们翻译的时候要注意把这层否定含义译出来。如：

The European Convention of Human Rights outlaws discrimination between the sexes. 欧洲人权大会宣布性别歧视为非法。

5. There's more than just knowledge at stake：这里 more than 我们译作"不仅仅是，不只是"，而不宜直译成"比……更多"。
6. The Department of Health now believes the only way to ensure that human cloning never takes place is to ban it. 这句话比较长，我们理解起来要注意，它其实是一个宾语从句，The Department of Health now believes that the only way ... is to ban it. 至于 to ensure that human cloning never takes place，我们可以理解为是修饰 the only way，这其中又包含了一个宾语从句 ensure that ...。

Passage 3

1. nuclear waste management：在这里，我们不宜把 management 译作"经营，管理"，不妨将其译成"(核废料的)处理"，相当于 disposal，而下文中的 waiting for safe disposal，我们根据上下文，灵活译成"等待安全的善后"。
2. be at the risk of contamination：be at risk of 我们已在前文中讨论过这个词组的译法。contamination 是一个不可数名词，指"污染"，可以是文中所述的物质污染，也可以用于精神污染，称为 ideological contamination。如：
   The water supply is being tested for contamination. 供水系统正在进行污染测试。
3. conventional technology：可译作"传统技术"。如：
   conventional behaviour/attitudes/opinions/clothes 等，我们通常都译作"传统行为/看法/观点/服装"，但在 conventional weapons/warfare 中，conventional 与 nuclear 相对，我们常译作"常规武器/战争"。

PART B

1. 这是一篇关于中国科技发展与改革进展情况的报告，所以翻译时在遣词造句上比较正式、严谨，并用了不少被动语态来表示新闻报告的客观性。
2. 虽然在中文中，"取得了一系列的成就"属于上一句话，但是我们分析前后两句的关系，认为它和下一句话有因果关系，所以在翻译时，译成 Thanks to ...，并且这里用 Thanks to，显然要比 Due to

或 Owing to 要好。

"取得一系列成就"的"取得"，我们可用"score"一词，如"获得成功，取得胜利，赢得奖励，取得最高分"我们都可用 score 一词，译作"score a success/victory/prize/the highest mark"。

3. "科技投入取得历史突破"也就是说在科技上的投入达到了历史最高水平，所以我们可译成 increase to a historical high。这里的 high 是个名词，意为"高处，高位"。如：

   利率上星期上涨又创新记录。Interest rates reached another record high last week.

4. "科技投入成为国家创新的基础条件"："前提，先决条件"可译作 a prerequisite for/to。如：

   公众的支持是这个计划成功的必备条件。Public support is a prerequisite for/to the success of this project.

5. "经济结构调整"："调整，改组，重组"都可译作 restructuring，特别是在经济体制改革中所进行的结构调整、企业重组都可用这个词。如：

   公司经过改组，有 2,000 名工人失业了。The company has undergone restructuring and 2,000 workers have lost their jobs.

6. "可持续发展"一般都译作 sustainable development。如：

   举行了一次大型国际会议，其目的是促进所有国家的可持续发展。A large international meeting was held with the aim of promoting sustainable development in all countries.

7. "基本形成"我们译作"has basically taken shape"。"形成"可译作 form，take form 或 take shape。如：

   我们的想法已经开始初具雏形了。Our ideas are beginning to take shape/take form/be formed.

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. 现在你可以说是上网了。

A：我听了你的意见，在因特网上申请了一个账户。
B：好，现在你可以说是上网了。你有免费电子邮件账户了吗？
A：是的，这是我的电子邮件地址。现在我可以和我在纽约的朋友莉莎通信了。
B：你还可以给她发个电子邮件附上你的照片。
A：科技正在进步，我听说有人正计划在轿车上安装电子邮件系统。
B：这就是说，在开车和乘出租车时我可以给你发电子邮件了。噢，那太棒了。

2. **我在一本科普读物上读到有关机器人的内容。**
A：我在一本科普读物上读到有关机器人的内容。你知道吗？机器人大小不同，形状各异。
B：是的。有些机器人小到如火柴盒一般大小，甚至比火柴盒还要小，而有些则如橱柜那么大。
A：在工厂里，机器人做最危险、最枯燥的工作。
B：而且有一种机器人能自动开关门。
A：似乎机器人更愿意随时为你效劳。
B：但是它们无法代替人。如果没有人给机器人设置程序，它什么也做不了。

3. **你知道任何关于核技术的东西吗？**
A：你知道任何关于核技术的东西吗？
B：是的，它指的是原子弹、氢弹、核电站等。
A：几天前，我去参观了一个展览，是有关中国核技术在民用方面取得的成就的。
B：那你一定是大开眼界了。
A：当然。核技术正广泛应用在工业、农业和医学上。
B：噢，它能创造奇迹。请告诉我这个展览在哪举办，我也要去看一看。

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

主席先生：

能有机会在研讨会上以“电子商务——现代商务的领导者”为题进行发言，我谨向您表示感谢。

电子商务继续以强势姿态跨进了新千年。俗话说，“只有变化才是永久存在的”，现在已变成“要么改变，要么灭亡”。

从事网上零售的亚马逊网，雅虎（互联网的门户），新浪网（中国互联网的门户），以及许多其他网站已成为现代商务的新领导者。

为了在21世纪的商业领域中取得成功，IBM和英特尔这样的传统型公司，正在对自己的商业模式作全面的改变，现在这成为一种必需。公司必须使因特网技术和程序成为自己核心业务的一部分。我认为一体化是成功的关键。

Passage 2

根据英国政府的计划，英国将成为世界上第一个明令禁止克隆人的国家。这是为了减轻公众对遗传技术的忧虑。

英国卫生大臣已宣布他将提出立法建议以禁止克隆人的实施。尽管英国旨在成为全球遗传学革命中的领先者，但若不设定严格的界限以消除公众的疑虑，就无法取得任何进展。

大臣们对有关意大利和美国的科学家准备克隆婴儿的报道深感不安。他们冒这个险不只是为了知识，还有金钱。

卫生部现在认为，确保克隆人的行为永远不会发生的惟一办法就是颁布禁令。

通过提出立法禁止实施克隆人，英国政府希望向国际社会发出一个信号——这种科学在道德上是不可接受的。

Passage 3

我很高兴在这里和大家谈谈我们在处理核废料问题上所取得的成绩。

世界各地的核电站中有上千吨核废料在等待安全的善后，最棘手的问题是许多设施不能防止泄漏。因此，地下水，地表水，土壤以及空气都面临被污染的危险。

我们最近开发了一种特殊的涂层能防止核废料渗漏到环境中去。

我们还研制出了高级机器人，能代替人在危险的环境下使用这种涂层。

另一个是成本问题。用传统的技术处理，仅美国的核废料处理就将耗资几十亿美元。有没有一种更经济、更安全的方法呢？方法是有的。

我们已经进行研究，利用植物进行环境净化。众所周知，植物可以吸收污染物，然后再把它们释放到空气中，所以这的确是一种十分有效的环保方法。

PART B

During the past five years, the Chinese Government has introduced a series of polices and measures to promote scientific and technological reform and development. Thanks to the great achievements scored, China's scientific and technological cause is now in its best period ever.

First, China's input in science and technology has increased to a historical high and China's environment and conditions for scientific research have improved significantly. Input in science and technology is a basic prerequisite for national S & T innovations and an important guarantee for a leapfrog progress in S & T.

Second, substantial progress has been made in the reform of the county's S & T development system. The problem of isolation of S & T research from economic development has been basically resolved.

Third, many hi-tech research achievements have been put into commercial production, making the hi-tech industry a major force in prompting economic restructuring.

Fourth, China has scored remarkable achievements in agriculture, industry and sustainable social development and made a series

of significant breakthroughs in industrial technology research.

Fifth, a pattern of all-round and multi-level international S & T cooperation has basically taken shape. China's international S & T cooperation plays an increasingly important role in serving the country's economic growth, social development and overall foreign affairs.

UNIT 7

SANITATION AND HEALTH

卫生与健康

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

clinic	inject
pharmacy	pulse rate
emergency room	rhythm of the heart
general surgery	keep to a diet
in-patient department	positive /negative reaction
observation ward	symptom
operation room	prescribe
out-patient department	health institution
registration office	public health
physical therapy	sanitary inspection
blood test	physical condition
blood transfusion	periodical health examination
general check-up	personal hygiene

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

1. 现在在欧洲和美国的一些国家，健康食品很流行。所谓健康食品，是指各种维生素、矿物质、补品、蛋白质补充剂等有机食品。
2. 现代都市人在紧张的工作之余，也十分重视健身，尤其是女士，为

了保持健美的身材，常会去健身房进行健美计划(slimming programme)，当然只有在运动量和饮食之间保持适度均衡，才能如愿。

3. 世界卫生组织(World Health Organization)的最新研究表明，人类进入21世纪，所面临的健康十大"杀手"是：冠心病、中风、肺炎、艾滋病、支气管炎及肺气肿、腹泻、死胎及死婴、结核病、肺癌和交通事故。
4. 在当今充满压力、竞争激烈的社会中，人们常会抱怨"疲劳"。"现代疲劳症"更多是由于心理、精神压力引起的，而不是由单纯的体力劳动引起，而这恰恰是十分危险的，需要引起我们的重视，应该学会放松自己，进行适度体育锻炼，避免自己处于"亚健康状态"。
5. 中、西医各有特点。如今，医学界正把中医和西医结合起来创造综合治疗法。中医已能治愈脑肿瘤了，科学家希望有一天，它能医治心脏病或癌症。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **I am getting fatter and fatter day by day.**

   A: Jack, you look rather heavy these days.

   B: Oh, yes. I am getting fatter and fatter day by day. What should I do?

   A: Well, I think you'd better eat less steaks and fried chicken.

   B: But I like nothing else.

   A: Have more fish and vegetables, instead. They aren't fattening.

   B: OK, I'll try. I hope it works.

   A: You'd better increase your level of physical activity. You know, balancing your activity level with your eating will keep your weight.

2. **I've been feeling run down.**

   A: I've been feeling run down so I thought I had better come for a check-up.

B: Lie down on the couch and I'll give you a thorough examination.

A: I had a fever yesterday and I coughed a lot last night.

B: I'll take a blood test and then you can have an X-ray.

3. **Health food has become very popular.**

A: Health food has become very popular in the US, Canada, and parts of Europe.

B: What do you mean by "health food"?

A: Well, all kinds of vitamins and minerals, supplements, and even organic foods are sold well nowadays.

B: I prefer to get my vitamins from food. The body is able to digest it better in the most natural form.

A: Yes. Vitamins, even the highest quality, are partly synthetic. But I think supplements are safe in small quantities.

B: Balance is the most important thing, so it is best to eat a variety of foods.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

Many people ask me if we can change a lifetime of bad habits. To a surprising degree, the answer is yes.

Over the past five years, scientists have accumulated a lot of data about what happens when aged people decide to turn their lives around[1]. The conclusion is heartening: the body has an amazing ability to heal itself, provided the damage is not too great[2].

Not sure where to start? Surprisingly, it doesn't matter since[3] one positive change usually leads to another. For example, becoming more active physically inspires many people to eat a healthier diet.

Make enough changes, and you will discover you have adopted

a new way of life. It doesn't mean doctors are unnecessary, but it's never too late to[4] eat right and get fit.

The most immediate benefit from adopting a healthy diet is that it can lower blood pressure. The surprising finding of the past decade is that weight training can change some effects of aging. If you want to improve your health, you need to change your bad habits. But if you are ready to turn your life around, the payoff can be huge.[5]

Passage 2

Ladies and gentlemen,

I'm glad to be here to report to you the current state of world health. The 20th century may have been the age of scientific advancement but, as the new millennium begins, in terms of world health[1] the progress has been surprisingly slow.

Despite growing life expectancy and economic growth, a billion people entered the 21st century without having a share in medical advances. Their lives are shortened and scarred by disease.

According to the World Health Organization's latest report[2], heart disease snatched life away[3] from 7 million people last year. It was the leading cause of death in the west and southeast Asia.

WHO's top 10 killers list can almost be divided between infectious disease[4] and non-communicable diseases. Infectious diseases are common in low-income countries while the latter are prevalent in wealthy nations.

The cause of one's death is an indicator of one's wealth. As well as a divide in causes of death, there is a big difference in money put into solving these problems. High income countries spend $55 billion annually on medical research, yet only a fraction of[5] this is devoted to solving the problems of the poor.

Passage 3

Fatigue[1] is one of the most common complaints brought to doctors, friends and relatives. You'd think in this era of labor-saving devices and

convenient transportation few people would have reason to be so tired. But more people complain of fatigue today than in old days.

The cause of modern-day fatigue are diverse and rarely related to excessive physical exertion. Those people who do heavy labor all day long almost never complain about being tired. Today, physicians report, tiredness is more likely a consequence of underexertion.

There are two main categories of fatigue — physical and psychological.

Physical fatigue is usually a pleasant tiredness, such as that which you might experience after playing a hard set of tennis. The cure is simple and fast: You have a good rest. Understanding the underlying emotional problem[2] is the crucial step toward curing psychological fatigue.

Emotional problems, especially depression and anxiety, are the most common causes of prolonged fatigue. There is a great deal you can do to deal with the severe prolonged fatigue.

Exercise helps you work in a more relaxed fashion.[3] At the end of a day exercise can relieve your tensions, give you more energy in the evening, and help you sleep more restfully. Another important point is that you should decide what you want to do and what you can handle comfortably, and say no to additional requests. Recognize your energy cycles and plan accordingly.

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

中医是中国固有的医学，古已有之。在过去，中医大多只存在于民间。建国以后，国家在发展西医队伍的同时，加强了中医药队伍的培养。举办各种中医进修学校和创办中医学院，是培养中、高级中医药人才[1,2]的重要途径。

对于外国人来说，中医既是神奇的，又是令人迷惑的。中医是一种和中国人的哲学观融为一体的医学，它讲究的是在治疗疾病的同时，还要找出并解决致病的原因。

传统的中医诊断很有意思，它不借助于仪器与化验，而只靠医生观察病人的气色，嗅闻病人的气味，询问病症的表现和靠“号脉”来确

定疾病，这就是“望、闻、问、切”四诊法。这种诊断方法全靠医生的经验和悟性[3]，所以很难传授[4]给别人，这是造成中医优秀医生不多的原因之一。

目前，在中国的各个地方一般都有专门的中医院，人们看病可根据自己病情的需要和个人的习惯，或选择看中医，或选择看西医。中西医结合[5]是中国特有的医疗形式，西医学习中医是促进中西医结合的重要措施。

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. A balanced diet is an important part of any fitness program.
2. You should maintain sustained physical activities for at least 20 minutes each day.
3. That weight-loss tea is not working. So I've decided to make my fitness program at the gym more intense.
4. The flu is going around. Do you have a fever and nausea, too?
5. I was going upstairs and ... well, somehow I slipped and fell. The next thing I was in hospital.
6. The doctor says I'll have to wear a cast for at least 3 months.
7. Stay away from work till next Tuesday, and don't overdo things.
8. If you want to improve your health, you need to make changes in your routine.
9. If you are ready to turn your life around, the payoff can be huge.
10. Emotional problems and conflicts are by far the most common causes of prolonged fatigue.

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. turn their lives around：这里我们译作"重新生活"，turn around/round 意为"改变，转变"。如：

   The American market turned around sharply about a week ago. 大约一星期前，美国市场情况急剧转变。

2. provided the damage is not too great：provided(that)或providing(that)表示一种假设，表示 if 或 only if，"只要，要是"，所以我们这里译作"只要损害不是那么严重"。如：

   He says he'll go parachuting provided/providing you do too. 他说只要你也去跳伞，他就去。

3. it doesn't matter since ...：在这里 matter 是动词，表示 be important，"要紧，有关系"。it doesn't matter 可译成"无关紧要，无所谓，不重要，没关系"等，这种表达方式常会用到。

   since 在这里表示原因，所以译作"因为"。

4. It's never too late to ...：我们可译成"为时未晚"。如有一句谚语叫 It's never too late to learn，我们就可以译成"学无止境，为时未晚"或"活到老，学到老"等。

5. the payoff can be huge：payoff 原意是 the result of a set of actions，即"结果"，这里可活译成"获益匪浅"。

Passage 2

1. in terms of world health：in terms of 意为"就……而言"。如：

   A computer is powerful in terms of capacity and speed. 就容量和速度而言，计算机的功能是很强的。

   A 200-year-old building is very old in terms of American history. 就美国历史而言，200 年的旧建筑就是很古老的了。

2. According to the World Health Organization's latest report：latest 是 late 的最高级，表示“最新的，最近的”，常和 news，report 等词搭配，译作“最新消息，最新报告”。注意 late，lately，later 和 later on 的区别。

   late 指事情发生得晚。如：

   I'm sorry I'm late. 我很抱歉迟到了。

   或：

   They always stay up late. 他们总是熬夜。

   late 还可指“已故的”。如：

   the late poet：已故诗人。

   lately 指近来，新近，与 recently 含义相同。

   later 和 later on 常可互换，可译作“后来，以后”。
3. snatched life away：snatch 本意为 take hold of sth. suddenly and roughly，即“抢夺”，在这里译作“夺走生命”，很符合中文表达习惯。
4. infectious disease 是指“传染性疾病”，同样 infectious patient，infectious hospital 是指“传染病人”和“传染病医院”。但是 an infectious laugh 应译作“有感染力的笑声”。

   communicable disease 也是指“传染性的疾病”，non-communicable disease 是指“非传染性疾病”。
5. a fraction of 是指 a small part of，即“一小部分”。如：

   The shopkeepers are complaining that business has been reduced to a fraction of what it was before the outbreak of war. 店主都抱怨说生意已经减少到了战前的很小一部分了。

Passage 3

1. fatigue 一词是不可数名词，指“疲劳，劳累”。身体上的和脑力上的疲惫分别称 physical fatigue 和 mental fatigue。如：

   He was dizzy with hunger and fatigue. 他又饿又累，头昏眼花。

   Increasing number of people in high-powered jobs are suffering from fatigue and stress-related illnesses. 越来越多担任高级职务的人感到劳累不堪，而且患有与压力有关的疾病。
2. the underlying emotional problem：underlying 是 underlie 的形容

词形式，这个形容词没有比较级与最高级形式，它表示“在……下面的”。在这里，我们译成“潜在的”。如：

What might be the underlying significance of these acts of violence? 这些暴力行为的潜在意义会是什么呢？

有时候，underlying 一词又可译成“隐含的”。如：

The underlying theme of the novel is very serious. 小说隐含的主题是非常严肃的。

3. Exercise helps you work in a more relaxed fashion：in a ... fashion 与 in fashion 的意义并不相同，所以我们翻译的时候要注意。in fashion 是指“流行，时髦，成为风尚”，其反义词组是 out of fashion。如：

Long，curly hair is in fashion this summer. 今夏流行长长的卷发。

而 in a ... fashion 是指“以……的方式、姿态”。如：

We talk in a friendly fashion. 我们以友好的方式交谈。

He walks in a peculiar fashion. 他走路的姿态很奇特。

PART B

1. “中医药人才”：我们译成 practitioners of Chinese medicine。practitioner 主要是指“从业者”，尤其指律师或医生，所以“行医者”我们常可称为 a medical practitioner。如：

   一个在伦敦开业的中医在治疗湿疹方面取得了显著的成绩。A London-based practitioner of traditional Chinese medicine has had remarkable success in the treatment of eczema.

2. “培养中、高级中医药人才”：“培养”可译成 foster，train 等词。foster 意为 encourage the development or growth，故含有“促进”之意。

3. “悟性”：也可译成 power of understanding/comprehension，但我们选择用 aptitude 一词，因为 aptitude 表示一种 natural ability or skill，含有“禀赋”之意，更为合适。如：

   My daughter has an aptitude for music. 我女儿在学习音乐上很有悟性。

4. “传授”一词我们可以译作 impart，teach 或 pass on，如“传授知识、技术”等，我们可以译作 pass on/impart one's knowledge，

pass on/impart one's technical skills。

5. "中西医结合"之"结合"，我们可以译作 mix 或 combination 等。如：

   我们应当在学校中尽量保持各学科的广泛结合。We should try and keep a broad mix of subjects in our schools.

   经验和精力的结合使她在商界取得成功。A combination of experience and energy made her succeed in business.

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **我一天比一天胖。**

   A：杰克，你近来看起来相当胖。
   B：唉，是啊。我一天比一天胖。我该怎么办呢？
   A：嗯，我想你要少吃点牛排和炸鸡。
   B：可我就喜欢这两样。
   A：多吃点鱼和蔬菜吧。这种东西吃了不发胖。
   B：好，我试试看。我希望能奏效。
   A：你最好要增加运动量。你知道在运动量和饮食之间保持平衡能控制你的体重。

2. **我一直觉得很疲倦。**

   A：我一直觉得很疲倦，所以我想我最好来检查一下。
   B：在沙发上躺下，我给你做次彻底的检查。
   A：昨天我发烧，晚上咳得厉害。
   B：我要给你验血，然后你再去拍 X 光片子。

3. **健康食品很流行。**

   A：健康食品在美国、加拿大和欧洲一些国家很流行。
   B：你所谓的"健康食品"指什么？

A：嗯，现在各种维生素、矿物质、补品，还有有机食品都卖得很好。
B：我还是喜欢从食物中吸收维生素。用最自然的方法，人的身体能消化吸收得更好。
A：是的。维生素就是质量再好，其中一部分也是化学合成的。但我想少量的补品是安全的。
B：平衡最重要，所以最好要吃各种不同的食品。

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

很多人问我，我们是否能够改变自己一生的不良习惯。答案在相当大的程度上是肯定的。

在过去的 5 年中，科学家们已经掌握了大量的关于那些上了年纪的人是如何重新生活的数据资料 。他们得出的结论是振奋人心的。我们的身体拥有惊人的自愈力，只要对身体的损害不是那么严重。

你是否不知道该从哪里开始？其实这并不重要，因为只要有第一个积极的改变，就会有第二个。打个比方，多运动会使人饮食更加健康。

当你已经做了足够的改变，就会发现自己已经开始了一种全新的生活方式。当然这并不是说我们不需要医生了，但是你只要马上行动，开始合理的饮食和积极的健身，还为时不晚。

合理饮食最直接的好处就是能够降低血压。过去 10 年的惊人发现表明，举重训练可以改变衰老带来的影响。如果你想改变自己的健康状况，就要改掉那些不良的习惯。不过，只要你愿意去开始一种全新的生活方式，就必将获益匪浅。

Passage 2

女士们，先生们：

我很高兴来到这里向大家报告目前我们世界范围内的健康状况。20 世纪也许是科技进步的年代，但是随着新千年的开始，就世界范围内的健康来说，其进展是非常缓慢的。

尽管人们的预期寿命和经济增长均呈上升之势，但有 10 亿人在进入 21 世纪时仍没能分享到医学的进步。他们的生命因疾病而缩短或被疾病侵扰。

根据世界卫生组织（WHO）的最新报告，心脏病在去年夺走了 700 万人的生命。它在西亚和东南亚是主要的致死原因。

WHO 的 10 大杀手名单可一分为二，一半为传染性疾病，另一半为非传染性疾病。传染性疾病在低收入国家很普遍，而后者流行于富有国家。

人们死亡的原因是其财富的一个标志。除了死亡原因这道分水岭，在为了解决这些问题所投入的资金上，也存在着很大的差别。高收入国家每年用于医学研究上的费用为 550 亿美元，其中仅仅一小部分用于解决穷人的问题。

Passage 3

疲劳是人们向医生、朋友和亲人最常抱怨的问题之一。也许你认为在现在这个时代，人们拥有各种节省体力的装置和方便的交通设施，很少会有理由感到疲劳。然而，今天抱怨疲劳的人比过去更多了。

现代疲劳症的原因多种多样，却很少与过多的体力消耗活动有关。整天从事体力劳动的那些人几乎从不抱怨劳累。今天，据医生们说，疲倦更可能是由于过少的活动所致。

疲劳主要有两种——身体上的和心理上的。

身体上的疲劳通常是一种令人愉快的疲惫，比如你在激烈地打过一场网球后就会有那种体验。其治愈方法简单又快捷：休息一下即可。而要治疗心理疲劳的关键是要了解潜在的情绪问题。

情绪问题，特别是忧郁和焦虑，是长期疲劳最常见的原因。有很多做法可以用来解决严重的长期疲劳。

锻炼有助于你以更为轻松的心态来工作。一天结束时，体育锻炼能缓解你的压力，给你在晚间补充更多的能量，帮助你更平静地入睡。还有很重要地一点是你应当弄清楚你想要做什么以及能够轻松地处理什么事情，学会对额外的要求说不。认识你自己的能量周期，并且据此制定计划。

PART B

Chinese medicine is a form of medicine that has been in China since ancient times. In the past, Chinese medicine was primarily found in the private sector. Since the founding of the People's Republic of China, the state has simultaneously developed Western medical teams and strengthened the training of Chinese medical practitioners. Through the opening of all kinds of schools for the intensive study of traditional Chinese medicine and pharmacy and through creating new Chinese medical colleges, many medium-and high-level practitioners of Chinese medicine have been fostered.

To foreigners, the traditional Chinese medicine is of magical effect and extremely puzzling. It is a medical science which merges itself with Chinese philosophy. What traditional Chinese medicine stresses is to find out the cause of the disease and cure it while alleviating the symptoms of an illness.

The diagnostic method of traditional Chinese medicine is very interesting. Diagnoses are made without the aid of any medical instrument or chemical examinations, but by observing the patient's complexion, smelling, inquiring about the patient's illness, and "feeling the pulse". These are the four ways of diagnosis: "observing, smelling, inquiring and pulse-feeling". They rely on a doctor's experience and aptitude for profession. So it is very difficult for a doctor to pass them on to others. That is one of the reasons why there are not many excellent traditional Chinese medical doctors.

Currently, there are specialized traditional Chinese hospitals in most locations in China, and when people go to see a doctor they can make a choice in accordance with their own medical situation or habits, and choose either a traditional Chinese doctor or a Western doctor. The mix of Chinese and Western medicine is a special way of treating illness in China, and Western medical practitioners studying Chinese medicine is an important step in the promotion of the combination of Western and Chinese medicine.

UNIT 8

SPORTS

体育运动

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

NBA	hit a strike	hockey
MVP	butterfly-stroke	stimulate
blocked shot	back-stroke	surfboard riding
rebound	freestyle	hemisphere
slamdunk	rugger	submit
half-court bullfight	cricket	

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

1. NBA Finals, Finals MVP, Shaquille O'Neil
   2000－2001 赛季季后赛创造了历史，洛杉矶湖人队以 15 胜 1 负创记录般的辉煌战绩卫冕成功，新湖人王朝浮出水面。中锋沙克·奥尼尔无疑是湖人队夺冠的最大功臣。他在总决赛场比赛中以平均每场得 33 分、16 个篮板、5 次盖帽、5 次助攻的全面表现当之无愧地蝉联总决赛 MVP(最有价值球员)。
2. Philadelphia 76er
   费城 76 人队，2001 年赛季与洛杉矶湖人队争夺 NBA 总冠军。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **Basketball**

(Jim and Bob have just watched NBA Finals. And now they are talking about the coming basketball match in their university.)

Jim: What a game! Laker team beat Philadelphia 76er and won the World Champion 2001 NBA at last.

Bob: Yes, and the second Finals MVP for Shaquille O'Neil, my favorite player.

Jim: I'm quite impressed by his 17 blocked shots and 16 rebounds.

Bob: If only I could slamdunk like him!

Jim: Do you want to practice some more next Sunday?

Bob: Okay! Maybe you can perhaps teach me how to pass the ball better.

Jim: Deal.

Bob: How about getting the team together for a half-court bullfight?

Jim: Sounds good. See you on Sunday.

2. **Bowling**

Susan: Could we have six rounds, please?

Clerk: Sure, you're on lane 10.

Susan: Thanks. So, Jerry, how often do you come bowling?

Jerry: Not very often. I must study on weekdays. My highest score is only 135 points, which I got only once. How about you?

Susan: About the same. I don't take it too seriously. I think I go up first ... Wow! I hit a strike ... I knocked them all down on my first bowl.

Jerry: Well done!

3. **Swimming**

Ivan: Oh! You swim like a fish. Do you often practice here?

Rose: Yes, I like swimming. It exercises every muscle in my body. It keeps me fit and my body in shape, and I have fun at the same time.

Ivan: Right. I'm best at butterfly-stroke and back-stroke.

Rose: Freestyle is my favorite. Mainly because it's the quickest.

Ivan: It's really a lot of fun to swim under the water.

Rose: Well, let's start before the pool gets too crowded.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

Respected Mr President,

Dear faculty and students,

Thank you, Mr President, for your gracious words of welcome.[1] I'm very pleased to get the chance here to introduce you the sports in some English-speaking countries.[2]

First, let's have a look at the sports in Britain.

The British love competitive sports.[3] For the most of the British public, the eight months of the football season are very important. Professional football is always a big business and every town has at least one professional football club. The English Premier League[4] draws global television audiences, and Michael Owen and David Beckham have become worldwide superstars.

Next to football, the British love horse racing.[5] Partly because the laws in Britain forbid such activities on Sundays, horse racing mainly takes place on working days and during working hours.

Great numbers of people play golf and tennis, which are more social adult games in Britain. Golf courses are also meeting places of

the business community. For instance, many bank managers play golf. Moreover, there are plenty of tennis courts which are available in public parks in every town, and anyone can play tennis cheaply.[6]

For schoolboys, they play rugger or soccer in summer and cricket in winter, while girls play tennis and a sort of baseball in summer and hockey in winter.[7] Maybe you will wonder if rugger is a cruel game to play for schoolboys. Rugby football is played with an egg-shaped ball. Though it can be dangerous as players wear no protective clothing, it is favoured by the middle class and quite popular at many "public schools".

Britain is the first home of many of the modern world's most popular sports.

My next lecture will focus on the sports in Australia. Your attendance is most welcome.

Passage 2

Welcome to my lecture. My topic today is "Sports in Australia".

In relation to its population, Australia holds an outstanding international position in sport.[1] It owns many and varied world champions. I'm sure the wonderful achievements by Australians in Sydney Olympic Games impressed all of you.

Many Australian youngsters, including boys and girls, begin playing regular competitive sports at the tender age of eight or under. Thousands of youngsters can be seen each weekend joining in football, cricket, tennis, basketball and particularly, swimming competitions. No wonder Australians have so many swimming geniuses, like Ian Thorpe.[2]

Sport plays an important part in school life, where a half day a week is usually devoted to inter-school competitions.[3]

People are fond of watching horse-racing, football, tennis and car-racing. And extensive reports from television, newspaper and radio constantly stimulate public interest.[4]

Popular water sports include swimming, sailing, surfboard riding, water-skiing, diving and fishing. In winter, snow sports have become popular and facilities in the snowfields have developed rapidly in recent years. More and more overseas skiers are coming to Australian snow resorts when the northern hemisphere is in summer.

That's all for my lecture. Thank you for your attention.

Passage 3

The modern Olympic Games are the biggest events ever organized in peacetime. They have a universal impact. The city which hosts the Games welcomes the whole world with open arms.[1] These days seven years are required for the host city to set up the Olympic event.

In order to host the Olympics, a city must submit a proposal to the International Olympic Committee. After all proposals have been submitted, the IOC votes. If no city is successful in gaining a majority in the first vote, the city with the fewest votes is eliminated.[2] And the voting continues, until a majority winner is determined.

In selecting the site of the Olympic Games, the IOC considers a number of factors. For example, which city has, or promised to build, the best facilities, and which organizing committee is most likely to run the Games effectively. The IOC also considers which parts of the world have not yet hosted the Games. Tokyo, the host of the 1964 Summer Games, and Mexico City, the host of the 1968 summer Games, were chosen partly to popularize the Olympic movement in Asia and in Latin America.

On July 13, 2001, in Moscow, the IOC President Samaranch declared: "The games of the 29th Olympiad in 2008 are awarded to the city of Beijing." Beijing exploded in joy. The decision of the IOC sparked great celebrations in Beijing, in every corner of China.[3] Beijing has been named host city for the 2008 Olympic Games. The Games have never before been held in China, the world's most populous nation. China's dream was realized on that night and now

the seven-year race to meet their Olympic goals begins.

Beijing's Games will be centered on an "Olympic Green", which is to be built in the north of the city. Although at present fields here, Beijing says, the site will have an Olympic village with 17,600 beds, very advanced sports facilities, press centers and lush woods in 2008.[4]

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

足球在欧洲历史悠久，它已经成为了文化的一个部分。当然，每个国家都有自己独特的“足球文化”。

英国的足球也许不能代表世界最高水平，但它的足球运行机制无疑是所有欧洲国家中最成功的。[1] 英超联赛世界闻名。部分原因应归结于英国人对体育运动的热爱。[2] 许多英国球迷喜欢聚在酒吧里，谈论他们热爱的球队和球星，一起观看比赛。也许因为在酒吧里饮酒过度，英国盛产足球流氓，让欧洲各国的警察越来越头痛。[3]

德国球迷主要来自社会中层阶级。一些球迷会穿着与球队同色的服装，佩带同样的队标，站在看台上不辞辛苦地支持自己热爱的俱乐部。[4] 而另一些球迷可能只是坐在看台上或在梯形看台上觅一处安静之所，他们的目的只是看场好球。意大利球迷甚至会放弃支持国家队，而支持当地的球队。

在中国，近年来，越来越多的人为足球所吸引。球迷俱乐部和球迷协会遍布全国。[5] 足球成为人们关注的焦点。2001 年 10 月 7 日，中国创造了历史。随着 1 比 0 战胜阿曼队，中国国家男子足球队历经 44 年的征途后，终于第一次进入了世界杯决赛。[6] 举国上下万千狂热的球迷欢呼雀跃，庆祝这期盼了数十年的历史性胜利。

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. Let's play man-to-man defense, and I'll mark this guy.
2. I scored a point from a jump-shot.
3. Their guards were in front of me every time I tried to shoot.
4. Let's get a few people together for a half-court bullfight.
5. This bowling alley has got 36 lanes and there are always some

free. You needn't book.

6. Do you want to wait in line, or find another alley?
7. That's the second time I've struck out this round.
8. You should hold your arm and wrist straight. If you don't have a solid wrist, you will never be able to control the ball.
9. I'll take you to my favorite pool, an indoor and heated one, very clean.
10. I get water in my ears when swimming the back-stroke and I haven't learnt how to control my breathing.

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. Thank you, Mr. President, for your gracious words of welcome.
感谢校长先生热情的欢迎词。
(1) thank sb. for sth.:因为(某事)向(某人)致谢。如:
Thank you so much for the help you've given to us. 非常感谢您给予我们的帮助。
(2) gracious 在这里意为"热情的，和善的，有礼貌的"。如:
His gracious manner impressed us. 他殷勤的态度让我们印象深刻。
Thank you for your gracious invitation. 感谢您盛情的邀请。
(3) words of welcome:欢迎词。类似的表达法还有:
speech of welcome: 欢迎词;
opening/closing/welcome speech:开幕/闭幕/欢迎词。
2. I'm very pleased to get the chance here to introduce you the sports in some English-speaking countries. 非常高兴我能有机会

在此向各位介绍一些英语国家的体育运动。

(1) I'm pleased to ... 意为"很高兴(做)……"。一般而言，"我很高兴/荣幸/骄傲……"等表示情感的句子可定为主句，放在句首。如：

I'm very pleased to meet you here, Mr Green. 格林先生，很高兴在此与您会面。

类似的表达法还有：

我很高兴……

I am pleased/glad/delighted ...

It is a great pleasure for me to ...

It gives me great pleasure to ...

我很荣幸/骄傲……

It is truly/indeed a privilege for me ...

It is a great honour for me ...

It gives me a great honour ...

I'm privileged that/to ...

I feel honoured that/to ...

(2) introduce sb. sth. / introduce sth. to sb. 向(某人)介绍(某事)如：

In an hour, Bob will introduce you the history of this university and the courses you should take. 一小时后，鲍勃会向各位介绍这所大学的历史和你们要选的课程。

(3) English-speaking (countries) 说英语的(国家)；
spoken English: 英语口语。

3. The British love competitive sports. 英国人爱好竞技运动。

competitive 在这里意为"比赛的，竞争的"。如：

They demonstrate the world not only the talent, but the competitive spirit. 他们向世界展示的不仅是才能，还有竞争精神。

competitive 还可以理解为"不亚于……的，超过他人的"。如：

Because of its competitive prices, this chain store has won the customers. 由于价格有竞争力，这家连锁店赢得了顾客。

4. the English Premier League: 英格兰超级足球联赛。

5. Next to football, the British love horse racing. 除了足球，英国

人也爱好赛马。

next to 在这里意为“在(某人/某物)的后面，跟在……之后”。如：

Next to skiing, her favourite sport is figure skating. 她最喜欢的体育运动是滑雪，其次是花样滑冰。

next to 还可以理解为“在……旁边”和“几乎，近于”。如：

Peter sat next to his pretty wife on the sofa. 彼得挨着他漂亮的妻子坐在沙发上。

I'm quite disappointed that my horse came next to last in the race. 我很失望我的马在比赛中得了倒数第二。

6. Moreover, there are plenty of tennis courts which are available in public parks in every town, and anyone can play tennis cheaply. 此外，每个镇上的公园都有很多网球场，人们打场网球的费用是很低廉的。

(1) tennis court: 网球场；
basketball/squash court: 篮球/壁球场；
football field/pitch: 足球场；
hockey pitch: 曲棍球场。

(2) available 在这里意为“(指物)可用的或可得到的”。如：

Tickets for Mariah Carey's concert are available at the box office. 玛丽亚·凯莉演唱会的票子票房有售。

You'll be informed when the book comes available. 这本书有货时就通知你。

7. For schoolboys, they play rugger or soccer in summer and cricket in winter, while girls play tennis and a sort of baseball in summer and hockey in winter. 对学校男生们而言，夏季他们打橄榄球、踢足球，冬季打板球；女生们在夏天打网球和一种棒球，冬天则是打曲棍球。

这个句子中列举了多种在英语国家比较常见的球类运动——rugby (rugger), soccer, cricket, tennis, baseball 和 hockey。注意表示“进行某种球类运动”时，不需使用定冠词 the，如：play tennis, play hockey。

Passage 2

1. In relation to its population, Australia holds an outstanding international position in sport. 按其人口比例来说，澳大利亚在世界体坛上的成就是非常出色的。

   in relation to sb./sth. 在这里意为"与某人(某事)有关，涉及某人(某事)"，有时这个词组也可以是：with relation to ...。如：

   This spaceship can be regarded first-rate in relation to the technology. 就技术而言，这艘飞船可以说是一流的。

2. No wonder Australians have so many swimming geniuses, like Ian Thorpe. 难怪澳大利亚拥有诸多如伊万·索普之类的游泳天才。

   no wonder 这个词组常常置于句首，意为"难怪……，这并不(太)出奇……"，类似的表达法还有 little wonder, small wonder。如：

   Small wonder he speaks English so well! 难怪他英语说得这么好！

   No wonder you were so late! You were stuck in the traffic jam! 难怪你到得这么晚，原来塞车了！

3. Sport plays an important part in school life, where a half day a week is usually devoted to inter-school competitions. 体育在学校生活中占有重要地位。学校每周都专门留出半天时间，用于校际比赛。

   (1) play a role 意为"扮演……角色，起到……作用"。如：

   He has played a variety of roles in his movies. 他已经在影片中扮演过各种各样的角色。

   Teachers play a key role in the learning process, students as well. 教师在教学过程中起到关键作用，学生也是。

   (2) devote oneself/sth. to sb./sth. 意为"为某人(某事)付出(时间、精力等)；献身于……"。如：

   I'm always devoting all my efforts to the work. 对于我的工作，我总是全力以赴。

   A decade has been devoted to develop this new medicine used for AIDS. 人们花了 10 年的时间来开发这种用于治疗艾滋病的新药。

4. And extensive reports from television, newspaper and radio con-

stantly stimulate public interest. 与此同时，电视、报纸和广播里的大量报道不断激发着人们对体育的兴趣。

stimulate 在这里意为“刺激，激发”。如：

Cartoons may stimulate children's imagination to some extent. 卡通片在一定程度上可以激发儿童的想像力。

This kind of movie failed to stimulate me. 这种类型的电影无法引起我的兴趣。

Passage 3

1. The city which hosts the Games welcomes the whole world with open arms. 主办城市张开双臂迎接整个世界。

   host 在这里是动词，意为“举办”。如：

   We are honoured to host a reception dinner to welcome Mr and Mrs President. 我们非常荣幸举办招待晚宴欢迎总统先生和夫人。

   host 还可以作为名词，用于词组 play host to sb. 中，表示“(作为主人)招待或款待某人”。如：

   The city of Shanghai is playing host to Yang Liwei, the first Chinese astronaut who has visited outer space in Shenzhou 5. 上海市接待了中国首位乘坐神州五号进入外太空的宇航员——杨利伟。

   同时，host 还具有定语用法，如：host city(举办城市)，host country(举办国)。

2. If no city is successful in gaining a majority in the first vote, the city with the fewest votes is eliminated. 如果第一轮投票中没有一座城市获得多数支持，则得票最少的城市被淘汰。

   (1) majority 意为“多数”，其形容词为 major，反义词为 minority。如：

   The majority of the public are against the proposal of putting off the meeting. 大部分公众反对推迟会议的提议。

   Only a minority of Japanese households doesn't have a car. 日本只有少数家庭没有汽车。

   (2) vote 在这里是名词，意为“表决，选票”。如：

resolve/settle the matter by a vote　　用投票解决此事
a majority/minority vote　　多数/少数票

How many votes will Bush receive in next year's election? 明年的大选布什会得到多少选票呢?

The motion was passed by 150 votes to 100. 该提议以 150 票赞成 100 票反对得以通过。

3. The decision of the IOC sparked great celebrations in Beijing, in every corner of China. 奥委会的决定在北京,在中国的每个角落掀起了狂热的庆祝。

spark 常用做名词，意为"火星,火花"。如：

The firework exploded in a shower of sparks and I was moved at the spectacle. 烟花炸开迸射出一阵火花，面对如此盛景，我感动不已。

不过，在此句中，spark 是动词，意为"引发(某事)"。如：

His speech sparked deafening applause amid the audience. 听众们对他的讲话报以雷鸣般的掌声。

4. Although at present fields here, Beijing says, the site will have an Olympic village with 17,600 beds, very advanced sports facilities, press centers and lush woods in 2008. 虽然现在这里还是田地，但北京方面说，2008 年这里将建成一个拥有 17,600 张床位，拥有先进的体育场馆和新闻中心,绿树成荫的奥运村。

(1) 17,600 beds

注意万位数的读法，英语中用 ten thousand 表示一万。因此，"17,600"应读做"seventeen thousand six hundred"。如：

25,000　　twenty-five thousand
40,200　　forty thousand two hundred
68,030　　sixty-eight thousand and thirty

(2) lush 在此句中意为"繁盛的，茂密的"。如：

When we ramble in the mountain, there's lush vegetation everywhere. 当我们漫步山中，处处可见茂盛的草木。

PART B

1. "英国的足球也许不能代表世界最高水平，但它的足球运行机制无

疑是所有欧洲国家中最成功的。”

对于这个句子，我们可以根据原文采用一个并列句，用 but，however 或 yet 等连词来表示转折意味；当然，我们也可以采用让步状语从句。

其中，注意“也许”的译法，不一定非要用 may 或 might 来表达，使用副词 necessarily 也是一个很好的选择。

necessarily 意为“必然，必定”。如：

Big men are not necessarily strong men. 高大的人不一定强壮。

We don't necessarily rely on you to accomplish this task. 我们不一定非得依靠你才能完成这项任务。

整句可译为：

British football is not necessarily the best in the world, but its football marketing is no doubt the most successful of all European countries.

2. “英超联赛世界闻名。部分原因应归结于英国人对体育运动的热爱。”

come from 意为“源于，来自于”，在本句中可以用来诠释为“归结于”。这个句子可译为：

The English Premier League is known throughout the world. Part of the reason comes from Britons' love of the sport.

或者，我们可以考虑使用副词 partly，它同样表示“部分地”，从而整个句子译为：

The English Premier League is known throughout the world partly owing to Britons' love of the sport.

3. “也许因为在酒吧里饮酒过度，英国盛产足球流氓，让欧洲各国的警察越来越头痛。”

(1) 对于“因为”这个词，我们有很多译法，如：because，since 或 for，而且我们也可以采用后续名词结构的 owing to，due to 或 because of 等。

(2) “让……头痛”，不一定用动词，我们可以在口译时转化成为名词 bring some headaches to ... 或 become headaches to ... 。

全句译为：

Partly due to the excessive drinking in the pubs, Britain also

produces some infamous hooligans, who have become increasing headaches for police officers in Europe.

4. “一些球迷会穿着与球队同色的服装，佩带同样的队标，站在看台上不辞辛苦地支持自己热爱的俱乐部。”
   要正确口译这个句子，主要是要熟悉一些与足球有关的词汇，如：球迷、与球队同色的服装、队标、看台、俱乐部等。
   “不辞辛苦地”可在英语中找到一个习语，译为 through hard and thin。全句如下：
   Some fans will dress themselves in their team's colours and badges, standing on the terraces to support the club through thick and thin.
5. “球迷俱乐部和球迷协会遍布全国。”
   我们可以用 set up clubs and associations 来表示“创建了俱乐部和协会”，“遍布全国”用介词词组 across the country 或 throughout the country。全句译为：
   Football fan clubs and associations have been set up across the country.
6. “随着 1 比 0 战胜阿曼队，中国国家男子足球队历经 44 年的征途后，终于第一次进入了世界杯决赛。”
   这个句子看上去较为复杂，首先，我们要考虑的是确定它的 SV 主干，即全句的主、谓、宾。至于其他的部分与 SV 主干是什么关系，用什么方法与主干相连，都是译好这个句子的关键。
   本句 SV 主干为：中国国家男子足球队进入了世界杯决赛。(China's national men's soccer team reached the World Cup finals.)“随着 1 比 0 战胜阿曼队”用 with ... 结构，“历经 44 年的征途后”用 after ... 结构连缀与主干之上，全句译为：
   Its national men's soccer team reached the World Cup finals for the first time after a 44-year journey with a 1:0 win over Oman.

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **篮球**

（吉姆和鲍伯刚刚看完 NBA 总决赛。现在俩人正谈论他们大学即将举行的篮球赛。）

吉姆：比赛真精彩！湖人队最终击败了费城 76 人队，赢得了 2001 年 NBA 总决赛冠军。

鲍伯：是啊！我最喜欢的选手沙克·奥尼尔蝉联总决赛最有价值球员。

吉姆：他的 17 次盖帽，16 次篮板球给我留下了深刻印象。

鲍伯：要是我能像他一样盖帽就好了！

吉姆：下星期天还要再练习一下吗？

鲍伯：行啊！也许你能教教我怎么把球传得更好！

吉姆：就这么说定了。

鲍伯：组织一个队打场半场球赛，怎么样？

吉姆：这主意不错。那周日见了！

2. **保龄球**

苏珊：我们买 6 局。

职员：好，10 号球道。

苏珊：谢了。对了，吉瑞，你多久打一次保龄球？

吉瑞：不常打。从周一到周五我要读书。最高记录才 135 分，仅此一次。你呢？

苏珊：差不多。我不是很沉迷于打保龄球。我想，我先开打吧……哇！我掷出了一个全打……我第一个球就把瓶子全部打倒了。

吉瑞：太棒了！

3. **游泳**

伊万：哦！你简直像条鱼！常在这儿练习吗？

罗丝：是啊，我喜欢游泳。它可以锻炼我身体的每块肌肉，使我身体健康，体型良好，同时我也能享受到乐趣。

伊万：对。我最拿手的是蝶泳和仰泳。

罗丝：我最喜欢自由泳，主要是因为这种方式最快。

伊万：在水里游泳真是快乐多多。

罗丝：啊，我们还是在泳池挤满人前先开始游吧！

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

尊敬的校长先生，
各位老师，各位同学：

感谢校长先生热情的欢迎词。非常高兴我能有机会在此向各位介绍一些英语国家的体育运动。

首先，让我们看一看英国的体育运动。

英国人爱好竞技运动。对于多数英国人来说，前后长达8个月的足球季节是很重要的。职业足球是一个大项目，每个城镇至少有一个职业足球俱乐部。英超联赛吸引了全世界的电视观众，迈克尔·欧文和大卫·贝克汉姆成了世界超级明星。

除了足球，英国人也爱好赛马。部分上由于英国法律禁止星期日赛马，因此赛马主要在工作日和工作时间里举行。

在英国很多人打高尔夫球和网球，这两种球是比较社会化的成人运动。高尔夫球场是商界人士聚会的场所。比如说，很多银行经理就常打高尔夫。此外，每个镇上的公园都有很多网球场，人们打场网球的费用是很低廉的。

对学校男生们而言，夏季他们打橄榄球、踢足球，冬季打板球；女生们在夏天打网球和一种棒球，冬天则是打曲棍球。也许你们会问：对在校男生而言，橄榄球是不是太过残酷？英式橄榄球使用的是一个鸡蛋形的球。虽然球员不穿防护外衣使得这项运动很危险，但它很受中产阶级的喜爱，在很多公学里也很流行。

英国是很多现代最流行运动的发源地。

我在下一讲里将着重谈一谈澳大利亚的体育运动。欢迎各位光临。

Passage 2

欢迎各位来听我的讲座。今天我的题目是“澳大利亚的体育运动”。

按其人口比例来说，澳大利亚在世界体坛上的成就是非常出色的。它在很多体育项目上都拥有相当多的世界冠军。相信各位对澳大利亚人在悉尼奥运会上创造的辉煌成绩记忆深刻。

澳洲许多青少年，不论男女，从 8 岁甚至 8 岁不到就开始参加正规的竞技项目。每个周末，成千上万个孩子进行足球、板球、网球、篮球，尤其是游泳比赛。难怪澳大利亚拥有诸多如伊万・索普之类的游泳天才。

体育在学校生活中占有重要地位。学校每周都专门留出半天时间，用于校际比赛。

人们喜欢观看赛马、足球、网球和赛车。与此同时，电视、报纸和广播里的大量报道不断激发着人们对体育的兴趣。

游泳、航海、冲浪、滑水、潜水和钓鱼是广受欢迎的水上运动。冬天，雪上运动也流行起来。近年来，雪场设施迅速发展。当北半球是炎炎夏日时，越来越多的外国滑雪者来到了澳大利亚的雪山胜地。

我的讲座到此结束。谢谢各位。

Passage 3

现代奥林匹克运动会是和平时期组织的最大型的赛事，它的影响力非同寻常。主办城市张开双臂迎接整个世界。如今主办城市需要 7 年时间来筹备奥运会。

为了举办奥运会，申办城市必须向国际奥委会提交一份申请。在所有申请提交之后，奥委会开始投票。如果第一轮投票中没有一座城市获得多数支持，则得票最少的城市被淘汰。投票继续，直到决出获得多数票的胜者。

在选择奥运会的举办地点时，奥委会将考虑几点。比如说，哪个城市已经或承诺建立最好的设施，以及哪个城市的组委会最可能办好奥运会。国际奥委会还将考虑世界上哪些地区还没有举办过奥运会。

之所以选择东京举办 1964 年夏季奥运会，选择墨西哥城举办 1968 年夏季奥运会，部分原因是为了在亚洲和拉丁美洲推广奥林匹克运动。

2001 年 7 月 13 日，奥委会主席萨马兰奇在莫斯科宣布："2008 年第 29 届奥运会将在北京举行。"北京成了一片欢腾的海洋。奥委会的决定在北京，在中国的每个角落掀起了狂热的庆祝。北京赢得了 2008 年奥运会的举办权。在此之前，中国，这个拥有世界最多人口的国家，从未举办过奥运会。那晚中国的梦想实现了，现在，为达到奥林匹克目标的 7 年征程开始了。

北京的奥运会将以"绿色奥运"为中心，奥运村建在北京市的北面。虽然现在这里还是田地，但北京方面说，2008 年这里将建成一个拥有 17,600 张床位，拥有先进的体育场馆和新闻中心，绿树成荫的奥运村。

PART B

In Europe, soccer has so long a history that it has become part of the culture. But each European country has its own "football culture".

British football is not necessarily the best in the world, but its football marketing is no doubt the most successful of all European countries. The English Premier League is known throughout the world. Part of the reason comes from Britons' love of the sport. Many British football fans enjoy gathering in pubs to talk about their favourite teams and players and to watch games together. Partly due to the excessive drinking in the pubs, Britain also produces some infamous hooligans, who have become increasing headaches for police officers in Europe.

German fans mainly come from the middle class of society. Some fans will dress themselves in their team's colours and badges, standing on the terraces to support the club through thick and thin. Others may only sit in the stands or seek a quiet spot and just want to see a good game. The Italian fans even abandon the Italian national team to support their local team.

In China, more and more people have been drawn to football in

recent years. Football fan clubs and associations have been set up across the country. Football is becoming a focus of interest. On October 7, 2001, China made history. Its national men's soccer team reached the World Cup finals for the first time after a 44-year journey with a 1:0 win over Oman. Jubilant fans throughout the country erupted in cheers and celebrated the historic victory for which they have waited for decades.

UNIT 9

CITIES AND COUNTRYSIDE

城市与乡村

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

commuter train	ferry	stroll
gleam	the Statue of Liberty	the Little Mermaid
lodging	quaint	the Leaning Tower of Pisa
low-key	savour	
pier	rehearsal	the Philippines

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

1. the Big Apple：大苹果城，美国纽约市的绰号。
2. 纽约由 Manhattan，Queens，Bronx，Richmond 和 Brooklyn 五区组成。
3. Broadway：百老汇，纽约戏剧、音乐中心。
4. the East River：东河，美国纽约州东南部一海峡，在曼哈顿与长岛之间。
5. World Trade Centre：世界贸易中心，由南北两座对称的、同为1,350英尺高的大楼组成。2001年9月11日遭恐怖袭击被毁。
6. St Patrick's Cathedral：圣·帕特里克教堂，坐落在第五大街的一幢哥特式(尖型)建筑，是美国最大的一座罗马天主教堂。
7. Gothic：哥特式建筑，为尖型建筑，盛行于12至16世纪。

8. Greenwich Village：格林尼治村，纽约曼哈顿的一部分，为作家、艺术家聚居地。
9. Van Gogh：凡高(1853－1890)，荷兰画家，后印象主义代表人物之一。擅长于风景画和人物画，代表作有《星夜》、《向日葵》等。
10. Picasso：毕加索(1881－1973)，西班牙画家、雕刻家，立体主义画派主要代表。代表作有《格尔尼卡》、《和平鸽》等。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **A house in the countryside**

M：Hi, Nicole, I heard you've bought a house in the suburbs, how can you manage to get to work from such a faraway place?

W：The commuter trains leave or arrive regularly every morning.

M：But in a big city you can enjoy the colourful life, the busy streets, the tall buildings, the crowds, the gleaming lights after dark.

W：Ken, these are the very reasons that make me buy this house. In the country, I feel so close to the nature. I breathe fresh air, eat fresh fruit and vegetables.

M：Mmm, possibly you're right. The city people almost lose touch with the land. But from the weatherman, I'm hardly conscious of seasons from flowers and leaves around us. However, in downtown, there're plenty of forms of entertainment, you can ease your pressure of work and life in cinemas, theatres, discos ...

W：In those places with the roar of traffic, the honking of horns, the crowds and endless car jams? Come on, why not listen to the humourous country sounds of cows and goats? Why not enjoy a natural beauty? I think that's the real peace.

M：There's something in that, I suppose. But I'm fond of

making new friends, you know, then I have a vast population to choose from if living in the city. On the contrary, in the countryside, quite possibly I can't meet more than twenty people in a whole day.

W: I know. However, now more and more people have bought or plan to buy a house in the country, you can find quite a few friends around you. It's like living in an extended family where you can relax and feel at home.

M: Sounds attractive! Maybe I should be one of your neighbours.

W: Welcome!

2. **Going camping in the countryside**

M: I'm taking my vacation soon. Which place do you recommend?

W: Well, I think we need a real rest at some peaceful hotel on a fresh water lake where we can go boating and enjoy the scenery.

M: That sounds a little boring. Hotels are beyond our means to stay for several days.

W: Then what about going camping in the suburbs? We can take a trip in the car to some lake where we could enjoy both quietness and scenery or go camping and swimming.

M: Say, that's an idea.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

My dear friends, welcome to New York City. I'm your guide, Mark. You know, we have only two days and three nights for a visit here. What to do? Where to begin?

Let's focus on Manhattan and experience the Big Apple to the greatest satisfaction.[1]

Now, everybody has got a free copy of *Where New York*, which lists restaurants, Broadway shows, and street and subway map. It's quite necessary as you can choose your own tourist programme here. Our lodging place lies just south of Central Park, near 59th Street, a great location with a large choice of hotels. After our arrival at the hotel, the first evening here should be low-key.[2] A casual meal in a local restaurant is a good idea, I think. Of course, you may take a leisurely carriage ride in Central Park. It depends on you.[3]

On the first morning, why not enjoy a ferry ride down the East River? You'll see the most famous Statue of Liberty with your own eyes. Actually, not long ago, the first stop in New York, in my view, should be the World Trade Center. Just imagine, at Floor 107 of New York's tallest building, the incredible 360-degree views and all Manhattan Island. Unfortunately, now, there's nothing but ruins there.

As for lunch, let's try a quaint restaurant near Chinatown for an authentic Italian lunch.[4] After dining, walk leisurely to energetic Greenwich, where you can have a late afternoon nap or rest while enjoying the sunshine, if the weather's good.

Ladies and gentlemen, Times Square is your first choice to spend the night. Go there to see the lights and let's feel the night's energy in New York. And a nightcap and some live music at one of the hotels before going to bed will make it a perfect day!

Oh, please don't forget to book theatre tickets to a Broadway show that you've wanted to see.

Passage 2

The second day you can get up a little later in the morning. After breakfast, walk down Fifth Avenue, visiting some shops. Located in the midst of skyscrapers, St Patrick's Cathedral will demonstrate its Gothic architecture and show its history.[1] The Museum of Mod-

ern Art on 53rd Street is another place worth visiting. Even if you don't generally visit museums, you'll likely love it. You know, you can hardly get more pleasure than savouring *Starry Night* by Van Gogh or great works by Picasso.

In the afternoon, go to Lincoln Centre first. Strolling there, if lucky enough, you'll see live rehearsals of ballet company, opera company, and symphony orchestra. Then walk east on 65th into Central Park. I must say it's really an amazing place for all of us.

Then you can make way for a restaurant close to this evening's location.[2] In Broadway, the curtain rises at 8 p.m. After the show, walk down Eighth Avenue to Times Square. Wouldn't it be marvelous to have another night there?

In just two short days you've tasted a big bite of the Big Apple. But, think of all that you missed! United Nations Headquarters, the Bronx Zoo and more great restaurants, more art museums! So, you can hardly wait for your next New York visit, can you?

The Big Apple awaits you!

Passage 3

Dear boys and girls,

Good afternoon. As you know, I've just come back from the recent travel around the world. I'm very pleased to be here to tell you about some interesting countries, cities and towns.

First, the Continent of Europe. As we all know, size is not a standard to define a country, which is a true blessing for Vatican City.[1] It is the smallest country in the world with an area of mere 0.17 square miles. As with any other country, Vatican City sports its own flag, coins its own coins, runs its own postal, transportation, telephone systems, and radio broadcasting station.[2] Vatican City is all grown up. Tourists crowd there throughout the year.

Children, do you like the Little Mermaid? Remember her? That beautiful and merciful princess who left the world of the Sea People to seek a human soul. When I was at the harbour in Copen-

hagen, I saw this Denmark's most-known statue. What is she looking at? Maybe she is missing her home under the sea. Copenhagen has less traffic noise and pollution than any other European capital. You can enjoy the old trees, ancient churches and castles, the coloured night lights and the beautiful gardens. You might feel as if you were in a fairy tale.

The Leaning Tower of Pisa is so famous that many visitors to Italy want to see it. The round tower where Galileo once had his famous experiment is more than 800 years old.[3] Due to the safety reasons, it was closed 12 years ago. Fortunately, the repairs to the Leaning Tower of Pisa has completed this year and visitors can be permitted to climb to the top, though only 30 at a time.

When I strolled in Paris, to tell you the truth, I really had a headache of the dog shit everywhere.

In my next lecture, you will travel together with me to the Philippines, to experience Flowers of May there. Your attendance is most welcome.

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

女士们，先生们，众所周知，中国是一个发展中国家，人口多，底子薄，经济不发达，农村尤其不发达。[1] 就中国的贫困地区而言，这种不发达主要表现在：一是基础设施薄弱。贫困地区较为集中的西部地区，虽然土地面积占全国的⅔以上，但铁路、公路设施所占比重却相对偏低。[2] 二是人口增长过快，教育、卫生等基本社会服务水平低。三是农业生产条件差，财政收入水平低。

1949 年中华人民共和国成立后，特别是自 20 世纪 70 年代末实行改革开放政策以来，中国政府在全国范围内实施了大规模扶贫开发，极大地缓解了贫困现象。[3] 从 1978 年到 2000 年，中国农村没有解决温饱的贫困人口由 2.5 亿人减少到 3,000 万人，贫困人口占农村总人口的比例由 30.7%下降到 3%左右。[4]

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. In the city, trains are packed; streets are crowded; buses are

full. There are bus queues and traffic jams everywhere.

2. Rents are high and buying a house of your own for average people is almost impossible.
3. Large modern cities are too big to control, which breeds crime and violence.
4. City people are not as warm-hearted and friendly as country people.
5. Most people love cities and many are flocking there from the country.
6. There are many reasons why city life is preferable: there are more places for entertainment and so on.
7. It is good to be near one's friends and be never cut off by weather conditions.
8. There are better schools, services and more chances of employment. There is a greater range of jobs and the pay is higher.
9. Commuting does not really affect those who live in cities. It is only a small inconvenience.
10. People easily adapt themselves to city life. Noise, traffic, those undesirable things are hardly noticeable.

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. Let's focus on Manhattan and experience the Big Apple to the greatest satisfaction. 就让我们以曼哈顿为中心，尽情体验大苹果城的生活吧！

   (1) focus on 意为“集中，关注”。如：

He's focused on these pictures and heard nothing. 他全神贯注于这些画，什么都没有听见。

I'm so tired that I can't focus on anything. 我太累了，精神没办法集中。

（2）experience 在这里是动词，意为"经历，体验"。如：

It's hard to imagine that you have experienced so much at the tender age of 12. 很难想象你12岁居然经历了这么多。

He experienced a lot when studying abroad. 在国外求学时，他阅历丰富。

2. After our arrival at the hotel, the first evening here should be low-key. 我们到达旅馆后，这第一晚的活动最好能适量而行。

low-key 在这里是形容词，意为"有节制的，克制的"。如：

Most of the inns in the countryside are small and low-key. 乡村的大部分客栈既小又单调。

Pleasant and low-key entertainment is advised at the wedding. 婚礼上提倡愉快而有分寸的娱乐。

3. Of course, you may take a leisurely carriage ride in Central Park. It depends on you. 当然，你也可以乘上四轮马车到中央公园里悠闲地兜上一圈。你自己决定吧！

（1）take a bus ride：乘公共汽车；

take a carriage ride：坐马车。

（2）leisurely 是形容词，意为"轻松的，悠闲的，不急不忙的"。如：

He is making a leisurely inspection of the spot. 他正在不慌不忙地检查现场。

Why not take a leisurely walk in the park? 怎么不到公园散散步呢？

4. As for the lunch, let's try a quaint restaurant near Chinatown for an authentic Italian lunch. 至于午餐，大家可以在唐人街附近找一家古色古香的餐馆，享用一顿正宗的意大利菜。

（1）quaint 意为"老式而别致的，古色古香的"。如：

Smoke drifted lazily from this quaint chimney. 炊烟从这个古色古香的烟囱袅袅腾起。

She has purchased a quaint little house for a vacation. 她买了一所古雅小巧的房子用来度假。

（2）authentic 意为“真实的，真正的”，或者“可靠的”。如：

The authentic signature of Vinci in the painting shows us the painting may be worth 10 million dollars. 画上达芬奇的亲笔签名告诉我们这幅画可能值 1,000 万美元。

Her statement seems so authentic that we all believe in her. 她的陈述似乎很可靠，我们都相信她了。

Passage 2

1. Located in the midst of skyscrapers, St Patrick's Cathedral will demonstrate its Gothic architecture and show its history. 圣・帕特里克教堂四周摩天大楼林立，它向人们展示着哥特式建筑和它悠久的历史。

（1）midst 作名词，意为“中间，中部”。如：

I found her looking around in the midst of the crowd. 我发现她在人群中四处张望。

What darted out of the midst of the thicket just now? 刚刚什么东西从灌木丛中窜出来了？

（2）demonstrate 意为“表明，显示”。如：

I'm happy the election demonstrates the democracy in action. 我很高兴这次选举以实际行动体现了民主。

What Bob did in the battle demonstrates how brave he is. 鲍伯在战斗中的表现证明他是一个多么勇敢的人。

2. Then you can make way for a restaurant close to this evening's location. 然后大家就可以启程，觅一处今晚活动场地附近的餐馆。

make way for ... 在这里等同于 make one's way to ...，意为“朝……走去，前进”。如：

Two little girls made way for/made their way to the woods. 两个小女孩走向树林。

同时，make way for ... 还可以表示“让位于……，腾出地方”。如：

Automobiles should make way for a fire engine. 汽车必须给消防车让路。

He retired this summer in order to make way for young men. 今年夏天他退休了，让位给年轻人。

Passage 3

1. As we all know, size is not a standard to define a country, which is a true blessing for Vatican City. 众所周知，面积不是定义一个国家的标准。这对梵蒂冈而言无疑是个福音。

   blessing 是名词，在这里意为“令人高兴的事物，带来幸福的事物”。如：

   What a blessing you survived the earthquake! 你能从地震中死里逃生，真是幸运!

   blessing 还可以理解为“祝愿，认同”。如：

   You'll never get my blessing to your marriage because you hurt me so much. 你伤我太深，因此休想得到我对你婚姻的认同。

2. As with any other country, Vatican City sports its own flag, coins its own coins, runs its own postal, transportation, telephone systems, and radio broadcasting station. 如同世界上任何一个国家，梵蒂冈悬挂自己的国旗，铸造自己的硬币，经营自己的邮政、交通、电话系统和广播电台。

   (1) sport 在本句中是动词，意为“夸示(某物)，炫耀地穿戴(某物)”。如：

   My father sports a moustache and looks smart. 我父亲神气地蓄着小胡子，看上去很不错。

   He always sports his collection of stamps. 他总是炫耀他收藏的邮票。

   (2) coin its own coins：这里的两个 coin 词性不同，分别为动词和名词，前者表示“铸造(硬币)”，在这里可用 make 或 mint 来代替；后者表示“硬币”。

   coin 作为动词，还可以表示“捏造，杜撰”。如：

   Do not coin terms that are intelligible to nobody. 不要生造谁也不懂的词语。

(3) run 在本句中意为"负责(某事物),经营,管理"。如:

He has no idea of how to run a successful business. 他不知道把企业办好的方法。

You know he runs one school, one football club, two companies and one fleet of taxis. 你知道他经营着一家学校,一个足球俱乐部,两间公司和一个出租车队。

3. The round tower where Galileo once had his famous experiment is more than 800 years old. 这座伽利略曾经进行过著名实验的圆塔已历经800多年的风雨。

experiment 在这里是名词,意为"实验,试验",常见于下列词组中:perform/carry out/conduct an experiment。如:

The researchers are repeating the experiment on rats. 研究人员用老鼠反复做实验。

You students should learn by experiment. 你们学生应当通过试验学习。

experiment 作为动词时,用于词组 experiment on/upon sb./sth. 或 experiment with。如:

We are not in favour of experimenting upon animals. It's cruel. 我们不赞成用动物做实验,这是残忍的。

Edison experimented until he succeeded in finding the right material for the filament of a light bulb. 爱迪生不断实验直到找出制作灯泡灯丝的适当材料。

PART B

1. "……中国是一个发展中国家,人口多,底子薄,经济不发达,农村尤其不发达。"

分析句子后,我们确定句子的主干为"中国是一个发展中国家","人口多,底子薄,经济不发达"以 with 结构表达,并连在主干之上:

... China is a developing country with a large population, a meager heritage and an underdeveloped economy, especially in the rur-ual areas.

"meager"在此意为"贫乏的,不足的"。如:

我们不满意她给我们基金的微薄捐款。We're not satisfied with her meager contribution to our funds.

2. "贫困地区较为集中的西部地区，虽然土地面积占全国的⅔以上，但铁路、公路设施所占比重却相对偏低。"
   这个句子看上去非常复杂，不知从何入手。因此正确翻译的关键就在于确定句子的语意中心："比重相对偏低"。整句译为：
   In the western region, where most of these areas are located, although the territory is over two-thirds of the nation's total, the proportions of railways and highways are relatively low.

3. "1949 年中华人民共和国成立后，特别是自 20 世纪 70 年代末实行改革开放政策以来，中国政府在全国范围内实施了大规模扶贫开发，极大地缓解了贫困现象。"
   这个句子中有一些较难译的词或词组，该如何正确翻译呢?
   "在全国范围内"用一个副词 nationwide 表达，"扶贫开发"译为 program for development-oriented poverty relief，"缓解"用动词 alleviate 表达。全句译为：
   Since the founding of the People's Republic of China in 1949, and especially since the end of the 1970s, when China introduced the policy of reform and opening to the outside world, the Chinese Government has implemented nationwide a large-scale program for development-oriented poverty relief. And this program has gone a long way toward alleviating poverty.

4. "从 1978 年到 2000 年，中国农村没有解决温饱的贫困人口由 2.5 亿人减少到 3,000 万人，贫困人口占农村总人口的比例由 30.7% 下降到 3%左右。"
   本句的口译重点在于正确地表达数字，如"亿、千万"的表达法和百分比的表达法：Between 1978 and 2000, the number of poverty-stricken people without enough to eat and wear in the rural areas decreased from 250 million to 30 million, and the proportion of poverty-stricken people in the total rural population dropped from 30.7% to about 3%.
   其中"没有解决温饱"译为 without enough to eat and wear。

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1．**郊区住宅**

M：嗨，妮可，听说你在郊区买了一幢房子，这么远的地方，你每天怎么上班呢？

W：每天早晨定点火车准时来往。

M：但是住在大城市你才能享受丰富多彩的生活，还有繁忙的街道，高楼，人群，入夜后闪烁的彩灯……

W：肯，这些正是我买房子的理由。在郊区，我与大自然是如此贴近。我呼吸的是新鲜的空气，吃的是新鲜的水果蔬菜。

M：嗯，也许你是对的。城市居民与大地几乎已失去了联系。有时候，我几乎无法从身边的花朵、树叶感知现在是什么季节，只能靠气象预报员。但是，住在市里，你能享受很多娱乐方式，如果你想摆脱生活、工作的压力，可以去电影院、剧院、迪斯科舞厅……

W：在那些充斥着交通的噪音和车辆的鸣笛声，到处是人，车子堵个没完没了的地方吗？得了吧，为什么不去郊区听听奶牛和山羊逗趣的叫声呢？为什么不来享受自然的美景呢？我想这才是真正的宁静。

M：有点道理。但是你知道，我好交朋友，住在城市，我有众多选择。要是住到郊区，很可能我一天遇见的人不超过20个。

W：我懂。但是，现在在郊区买房或计划买房的人越来越多，你会发现周围有很多朋友。就像生活在一个大家庭里，你可以彻底放松，无拘无束。

M：太吸引人了！说不定我会成为你的邻居哦！

W：欢迎！

2．**郊区野营**

A：我要休假了。推荐个地方吧！

B：哦，我认为湖畔的某个清静的旅馆不错，我们需要好好休息一

下，那儿湖水清清，我们还可以划划船，欣赏欣赏风景。

A：听起来太乏味了。在旅馆里住上好几天超出了我们的经济能力。

B：那到郊区野营怎么样？我们可以开车到某个湖边，既可以拥有安宁，欣赏美景，还能野营，或是游泳呢！

A：这主意不错！

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

各位朋友，欢迎来到纽约！我是大家的向导，马克。大家都知道，我们这次纽约之行只有两天三夜。那该做些什么呢？该从哪儿开始呢？

就让我们以曼哈顿为中心，尽情体验大苹果城的生活吧！

现在，各位手中都有一册免费的《纽约指南》，上面列出了市内的饭店、百老汇剧场以及街道、地铁路线图。这对各位非常有用，因为你们可以自由安排旅游线路。我们的下榻之所就在中央公园南面，靠近第59街，那里地理环境优越，有众多旅馆可供选择。我们到达旅馆后，这第一晚的活动最好能适量而行。我看，去当地饭店吃顿便饭就很不错了。当然，你也可以乘上四轮马车到中央公园里悠闲地兜上一圈。你自己决定吧！

第一天上午，大家不如尝试一下沿东河而下的轮渡之游。你将亲眼目睹久负盛名的自由女神像。其实，若是不久之前来到纽约，依我看，第一站应当是世界贸易中心。想像一下，身处纽约最高建筑物的第107层，令人难以置信的360度视野，整个曼哈顿岛尽收眼底。不幸的是，如今，那里只剩一片废墟。

至于午餐，大家可以在唐人街附近找一家古色古香的餐馆，享用一顿正宗的意大利菜。饭后，悠哉悠哉地踱到生机盎然、热热闹闹的格林尼治村，在那儿，如果天气不错，大家可以晒着太阳，打个盹儿或休息一下。

女士们、先生们，时代广场是您入夜休闲的首选地方。去那儿看

看闪烁的灯光，感受一下纽约夜晚的生机活力。晚上入睡前，小酌几杯或听听在旅店上演的现场音乐会，你这一天过得实在是太完美了！

哦，请不要忘记预定你感兴趣的百老汇戏剧的票子！

Passage 2

第二天早晨，大家可以起得晚些。吃过早饭，沿着第五大道逛逛店铺。圣·帕特里克教堂四周摩天大楼林立，它向人们展示着哥特式建筑和它悠久的历史。位于第53街的现代艺术博物馆也很值得一游。即使你平日不大参观博物馆，也会喜欢上它。你要知道，漫步其中，欣赏着凡高的《星夜》和毕加索的大作可是人生无上的快乐啊！

下午先去林肯表演艺术中心。信步之时，运气好的话，大家会看到一些芭蕾舞团、歌剧院和交响乐团的现场彩排。接着沿65街往东走，就到了中央公园。我想它对每个人而言都是一个奇妙的地方。

然后大家就可以启程，觅一处今晚活动场地附近的餐馆。百老汇的戏剧8点钟开始上演。看完戏后，沿第八大街走到时代广场。在那儿再呆上一个晚上可是不赖的主意哦！

在这短短的两天之中，其实大家已经逛过了大半个纽约。但是，想想看那些没来得及欣赏的东西——联合国总部、布朗克斯动物园，还有更多不错的餐馆，更多的艺术馆！大家一定等不及下次的纽约之行了吧！

苹果城纽约时刻期待着你的光临！

Passage 3

孩子们：

下午好！大家知道，我刚刚结束最近的环球旅行。很高兴能在这里给大家讲讲一些有趣的国家和市镇。

第一站是欧洲大陆。众所周知，面积不是定义一个国家的标准。这对梵蒂冈而言无疑是个福音。梵蒂冈是世界上最小的国家，国土面积仅有0.17平方英里。如同世界上任何一个国家，梵蒂冈悬挂自己的国旗，铸造自己的硬币，经营自己的邮政、交通、电话系统和广播电台。简直可以称为：麻雀虽小，五脏俱全。梵蒂冈四季游人如织。

孩子们，喜欢小美人鱼吗？记得她吗？那个美丽善良的小公主，她离开了海底世界，想成为一个真正的人。当我站在哥本哈根的港口

时，我见到了丹麦这座最闻名的雕塑。她眺望着什么地方呢？也许在怀念那海底的家乡吧！哥本哈根的交通噪音和污染比其他欧洲国家的首都都要轻。在这儿你可以欣赏到古树，历史悠久的教堂和城堡，还有那夜晚的霓虹和美丽的花园。你会觉得仿佛置身童话之中。

比萨斜塔遐迩闻名，许多来到意大利的游客都想目睹它。这座伽利略曾经进行过著名实验的圆塔已历经 800 多年的风雨。鉴于安全问题，斜塔 12 年前被关闭。所幸的是，比萨斜塔的修复工作今年已完成。游客可以攀登斜塔至塔顶，但是一次只能容许 30 名。

当我漫步巴黎街头，说老实话，遍地的狗屎让我头疼不已。

下一次讲座，大家将和我一起游历菲律宾，去感受它的五月花节。欢迎光临！

PART B

Ladies and gentlemen, as you know, China is a developing country with a large population, a meager heritage and an underdeveloped economy, especially in the rural areas. In terms of poverty-stricken areas in China, the underdevelopment is mainly reflected in the following: First, weak infrastructure. In the western region, where most of these areas are located, although the territory is over two-thirds of the nation's total, the proportions of railways and highways are relatively low. Second, a rapidly growing population, and the low level of education, public health and other basic social services. Third, poor agricultural production conditions and low revenue.

Since the founding of the People's Republic of China in 1949, and especially since the end of the 1970s, when China introduced the policy of reform and opening to the outside world, the Chinese Government has implemented nationwide a large-scale program for development-oriented poverty relief. And this program has gone a long way toward alleviating poverty. Between 1978 and 2000, the number of poverty-stricken people without enough to eat and wear in the rural areas decreased from 250 million to 30 million, and the proportion of poverty-stricken people in the total rural population dropped from 30.7% to about 3%.

UNIT 10

CULTURE AND HISTORY

文化与历史

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

strip	candidate	ally	pumpkin
wreath	recommend	nightmare	crystal
holly	Nazi	Halloween	

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

1. Hitler：希特勒(1889－1945)，纳粹德国元首，头号战犯。仇恨共产主义和犹太人，实行法西斯专政，发动第二次世界大战，战败自杀。
2. President Roosevelt：罗斯福(1884－1962)，美国第32任总统(1933－1945)。第二次世界大战爆发时支持英国和法国，太平洋战争(1941)爆发后对建立反法西斯同盟作出重大贡献。
3. Normandy：诺曼底，法国西北部一地区，北临英吉利海峡。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **Everyday etiquette**

Bob： One of my relatives sent me a lovely fruit basket, but by the time it arrived, much of it was spoilt. Should I tell him what happened?

Jim: Of course you can, but delicately. That is to say, pay attention to your tone. You could say something like, " I have really been enjoying your gift. But in case you ever order from that company again, I thought you'd want to know that some of the fruit was spoiled when it arrived. I contacted them and they sent a replacement basket right away."

2. **The American national flag**

George: It's said the 13 red and white stripes suggest the number of original states in America. Is it true?

Hans: Yes, the original 13 states. And 50 white stars in the corner blue stand for 50 states.

George: Is there any official flag code?

Hans: Surely. For example, the national flag can't be used as decorative clothing. However, some people find it quite fashionable if they do so.

3. **Christmas traditions**

Frick: Maria, why do we hang wreaths at Christmas?

Maria: Probably because we get the custom of giving wreaths as gifts in ancient Rome.

Frick: Then, why holly instead of other plants?

Maria: Long ago in northern Europe, people put holly in their homes during the dark, bitterly cold winter. The plant's bright colours symbolized a promise of the sun's return. That is to say, holly can bring us hope and happiness.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

Today let's say something about the origins of a few popular words

in America.

The word "OK" first appeared in the newspapers in Boston in 1839. The next year, 1840, was a presidential election year. Some supporters of a candidate formed an OK club in New York City. Although OK, the politician, lost the election, "OK", the expression, has been strengthened and is widely used ever since.[1]

Now, a woman can use Mrs, Miss, or Ms as she wishes. However, for a long time after women finally got the right to vote in America in 1920, women didn't win the battle for equal status and respect. They were addressed as either Mrs or Miss, depending on whether they were married or not. If the address was wrongly applied, it implied a sense of insult.[2] In 1952, the abbreviation Ms for all women addresses was recommended.

In the eighteenth century, the American Indians used the deerskin for buying and selling, and later as a unit of value for trading anything else. The deerskin was called "buck" at that time. In the next century, sheets of deerskin were less often served as a medium of exchange, however, the buck passed to the dollar.

Thank you!

Passage 2

Dear faculty and students,

Thank you very much for your kind words of welcome. Today we're here to celebrate Youth Day. I think some knowledge of World War II will help us to treasure our present happiness more.[1]

In September, 1939, Germany's attack on Poland signaled the start of WWII. The lightning war of Nazi forces conquered so many countries that in Europe it was just Britain alone fighting against Hitler and his allies.

On the morning of December 7, 1941, Japanese planes bombed the American navy base in Hawaii — Pearl Harbor. About 3,000 Americans were killed or wounded while 247 planes and 18 warships were lost. The following day, President Roosevelt declared war

against Japan.

The famous D-Day Battle of Normandy on June 6, 1944 was the turning point of WWII. By late February 1945, the Germans were forced to retreat across the Rhine River. Hitler shot himself and on May 8, 1945, Germany surrendered. On August 14 in the same year, Japan surrendered and the Second World War ended.

Though the war ended, its horrible result continued. From 1939 to 1945, 61 countries had involved in this six-year war.[2] Numerous homes were ruined, and more than 25 million soldiers and civilians died. It was the cruelest war on the largest scale in human history, which nearly destroyed mankind.[3]

WWII is really a nightmare to the people all over the world. Now it's time for us to wake up. War can't settle any problem. Mutual understanding and cooperation are the only way out.[4] Peace is precious!

Thank you for your attention!

Passage 3

In America, you will experience a lot of holidays year round.[1]

January 1st is New Year's Day, the first day of the year. It is a legal holiday, and all banks, stores and schools are closed. Many people invite their friends to come and visit them in the afternoon or evening of New Year's Day.

The only legal holiday in February is George Washington's birthday. Although he was born on February 22nd, his birthday is now always celebrated on the third Monday in February.[2]

Easter Sunday is in spring, usually in April. Little children believe the Easter rabbit comes and leaves the eggs for them. So they have Easter egg hunts on Sunday. And egg-rolling contests are also very popular with Americans at Easter time.[3]

America's great national holiday falls on July 4th. 4 It was on this day in 1776 that the colonists declared their independence of England. On the 4th of July now, people display the flag of the

United States, and many cities have parades. At night there are displays of fireworks.

The leaves change. It's autumn, right? And this means Halloween! October 31st, a great occasion for both kids and adults to get out of the ordinary life, to enjoy themselves. It's the magic time. How can we forget Cinderella, the pumpkin carriage and the lost crystal shoe?

November is associative with Thanksgiving Day.[5] I'm sure Mr. White has told you its origin and tradition in his history class. I'm just hoping that you won't be too much stuffed with roast turkey.[6]

December 31st is New Year's Eve, the last of the old year. It is traditionally a time for parties. People stay up to greet the New Year at midnight with noise and merriment.

Of course, in December there's a very, very important nationwide holiday — Christmas Day. My next lecture will focus on it. Now, your questions are most appreciated.

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

女士们，先生们：

春节好！

今天是我们中国的农历新年，我非常高兴给诸位来自五湖四海的朋友介绍一些传统风俗。[1]

中国人将年定为12年一循环，每一年都用一种动物来命名，比如说，鼠年、虎年、猪年和龙年。[2]2002年是中国的马年，它生机勃勃，人们相信它会带来成功。

在中国，新年节期前后整整一个月。人们购置许多礼物、装饰品和衣服，并且彼此馈赠。很多人急急忙忙赶回家与家人团聚，交通因此变得异常繁忙。

春节前几天，每家每户都忙着彻底打扫房子，希望能够扫除霉运。[3]一些人会在门上贴上春联。

除夕时，全家人齐聚一堂吃年夜饭。[4]第二天一早，孩子们给父母拜年，说不定还能拿到礼物。然后，一家子挨家挨户拜访左邻右舍、亲朋好友。[5]这时，长辈常常给小孩一个红色的信封，里面装上点钱。

为什么是红色呢？因为根据中国的文化，红色代表着吉祥如意，常用于喜庆场合，比如说，春节或是传统的婚礼。我注意到今天我们这里不少人也穿上了红色的衣服。

最后，祝大家新年身体健康，万事如意！

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. For many people, Christmas is a deeply religious occasion celebrating the birth of Christ.
2. For many people, Christmas is simply a time to be with one's family, to feast, and to be merry.
3. On Christmas Eve, some people light candles in the window. The candles symbolize a welcome to cold and weary travelers.
4. In many ways, the children born in the 1980s are blessed. For most of their lives, the economy has been booming. They will also probably be the best-educated generation in history.
5. Those born in the 1980s are likely to have friends from many different ethnic and racial backgrounds.
6. Those born in the 1980s are accustomed to a world of information and a social life based on e-mail just a mouse-click away.
7. Halloween is very much affected by the toy industry, and what's hot in the movies, and even current events.
8. Today American parents usually give their children Easter rabbit toys and children enjoy eating candy rabbits and listening to stories about the Easter rabbit, who brings Easter eggs, for good children only.
9. Mother's Day is celebrated on the second Sunday in May. Mother often receives greeting cards and gifts from her husband and children.
10. Father's Day is celebrated on the third Sunday in June. Father receives greeting cards and gifts from his family and enjoys a day of leisure.

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. Although OK, the politician, lost the election, "OK", the expression, has been strengthened and is widely used ever since. 虽然那位 OK 政治人士落选了，但是 OK 这个词却得到了强化，从此开始被广泛使用起来。

   (1) since 作连词，意为"从那时到现在"。如：

   We have both changed since we parted. 分别以来我们彼此都变了。

   (2) since 作连词，也可解释为"因为，既然，鉴于"。如：

   Since you are young, you still have many chances. 因为你还年轻，机会仍然很多。

   Since that is so, there is no more to be said. 既然如此，再没什么可说的了。

   (3) 这里 ever since 作副词词组用，意为"从那以后"。如：

   They left town and haven't been here ever since. 他们离开了镇子，从那以后再也没有来过这儿。

2. If the address was wrongly applied, it implied a sense of insult. 称呼用错还会含有侮辱之意。

   (1) apply 意为"应用，使用，适用"，这时介词用"to"。如：

   She applies all her money to her mortgage. 她将她所有的钱都用来付抵押贷款。

   The principle of diligence and frugality applies to all undertakings. 勤俭节约的原则适用于一切事业。

   (2) apply 也可意为"请求，申请"，这时介词用"for"。如：

   I want to apply for the job. 我想申请这份工作。

   (3) apply 还可意为"专心，集中精力"。如：

The new comer applied his mind to the job. 新来的职员工作专心致志。

Passage 2

1. I think some knowledge of World War II will help us to treasure our present happiness more. 我认为了解一下第二次世界大战的历史能使我们更珍惜眼前的幸福。
   (1) treasure 意为“珍爱，珍惜”。如：
   I treasure your friendship. 我珍惜你的友谊。
   He treasures the watch his mother gave him. 他珍爱母亲送给他的表。
   (2) treasure 还可引申为“铭记”。如：
   I'll treasure tonight up in my memory. 我将永远铭记这个晚上。
2. From 1939 to 1945, 61 countries had been involved in this six-year war. 从1939年到1945年，61个国家被卷入这场持续了6年的大战。
   (1) involve 意为“牵涉，拖累”。如：
   Don't involve other people in your trouble. 别把别人牵涉进你的麻烦中去。
   (2) involve 还可表示“包括，涉及”。如：
   All the children were involved in the school play. 所有的孩子都参加了学校排练的剧。
   This lesson involves a lot of work. 这一课需要做的工作有很多。
3. It was the cruelest war on the largest scale in human history, which nearly destroyed mankind. 第二次世界大战是人类历史上规模最大、最残酷的战争，它几乎毁灭了人类。
   (1) scale 意为“规模，大小”。如：
   They are preparing for war on a large scale. 他们正在大规模地备战。
   Any public demonstration on a large scale without the permission of the city authorities is antisocial. 未经市政当局

的允许举行大规模游行示威是妨害社会秩序的。

(2) scale 还解释为“尺度，刻度，刻度尺”。如：

A machine for weighing people has a scale from one pound to 300 pounds on it. 称体重的机器上有从 1 磅到 300 磅的刻度。

(3) scale 还解释为“比例，比率，比例尺，缩尺”。如：

The scale of this map is one centimeter to the kilometer. 这个地图的比例是用 1 厘米代表 1 公里。

4. Mutual understanding and cooperation are the only way out. 理解和合作才是惟一的出路。

(1) way 解释为“出路”。如：

Is this the way out? 这是出去的路吗?

(2) way 还可解释为“距离”。如：

We have to go a long way to school. 我们上学得走很长的路。

(3) way 还可解释为“方式，方法”。如：

Each successful manager has a way of his own in bringing his views to bear. 每一个成功的经理都有他自己独特的方式使别人接受他的意见。

Some like the older ways of doing things. 有些人喜欢处理事务的老办法。

Passage 3

1. In America, you will experience a lot of holidays year round. 在美国，人们一年要过上许多节日。

(1) experience 作动词，意为“经历，感受”。如：

Our country has experienced great changes in the last thirty years. 我国在过去 30 年经历了巨大变化。

Suddenly she experienced nausea. 突然间她感到一阵恶心。

(2) experienced 作形容词，意为“有经验的”。如：

He is thoroughly experienced in teaching。他在教学方面十分有经验。

2. Although he was born on February 22nd, his birthday is now al-

ways celebrated on the third Monday in February. 乔治·华盛顿是2月22日出生的，但我们总是在2月的第三个星期一来庆祝他的诞辰。

（1）celebrate 意为“庆祝，庆贺”。如：

We celebrated the New Year with a dance party. 我们举行舞会庆祝新年。

He celebrated his birthday with a banquet. 他举行宴会庆祝自己的生日。

（3）celebrate 还可解释为“歌颂，赞扬”。如：

This is a sonnet that celebrates love. 这是一首歌颂爱情的十四行诗。

The names of many heroes are celebrated by the poets. 许多英雄的名字为诗人所歌颂。

3. And egg-rolling contests are also very popular with Americans at Easter time. 此外，复活节时期的滚蛋游戏也是美国人所青睐的。

（1）popular 意为“受大众欢迎的”。如：

He's a good politician but he isn't popular with the masses. 他是一位不错的政治家，但不受大众欢迎。

（2）popular 还可解释为“大众的”。如：

It's a popular opinion. 这是大众的意见。

（3）popular 还可解释为“通俗的，普及的”。如：

It's a popular song. 这是一首通俗歌曲。

（4）popular 还可解释为“平民的，一般人的，适于普通人的或普通人能办到的”。如：

This model keeps a popular price. 这款型号价格低廉。

4. America's great national holiday falls on July 4th. 7月4日是美国的国庆节。

（1）fall 意为“发生在特定时间”。如：

New Year's Day falls on a Tuesday this year. 今年的元旦是星期二。

（2）fall 也可解释为“落下，掉下，降落”。如：

The book fell off the shelf. 这本书从架子上掉了下来。

The price of food has fallen. 食品价格下跌了。

Rain was falling steadily. 雨不停地下着。

(3) fall 还可解释为“停留,安放”。如:

The light fell on my book. 光线落在我的书上。

5. November is associative with Thanksgiving Day. 说到11月，就会联想到感恩节。

(1) associate 意为“联想到，联系到”。如:

We associate China with the Great Wall. 说起中国，我们就会联想到长城。

(2) associative 意为“联想的”。如:

Snow is associative with winter. 冬天使人联想起雪。

6. I'm just hoping that you won't be too much stuffed with roast turkey. 我只希望你们吃烤火鸡时，千万别撑着!

(1) stuff 意为“饱食,暴食”。如:

He stuffed himself full of food. 他吃得很饱。

(2) stuff 还可解释为“使(脑筋里)装满”。如:

His head is stuffed with silly notions. 他满脑子的愚蠢想法。

(3) stuff 还可解释为“填塞，填充,塞入”。如:

The bed was stuffed with cotton so it was very soft. 这张床里塞满了棉花，因此很柔软。

PART B

1. “今天是我们中国的农历新年，我非常高兴给诸位来自五湖四海的朋友介绍一些传统风俗。”

(1) 我们知道“元旦,新年”译为“New Year”，而中国的“农历新年”则可以译成 lunar new year，或直接译为 Spring Festival。

(2) “五湖四海”理解为“来自世界各地的”，用英文表达为 from all parts of the world 或者 from every corner of the world。

全句译为:

It is the lunar new year in China today and I'm so glad to introduce some traditional customs to all the friends from all parts of the world.

2. “中国人将年定为12年一循环，每一年都用一种动物来命名，比如说，鼠年、虎年、猪年和龙年。”

(1) “将年定为 12 年一循环”译为 mark the years in a 12-year cycle。

(2) “命名”在英语中可用词组 name sth. after sth. else。

全句译为：

The Chinese mark the years in a 12-year cycle, in which each year is named after an animal, such as the Rat, the Tiger, the Pig and the Dragon.

在译文中，我们采用了定语从句将两个子句合并成一个复合句。

3. “春节前几天，每家每户都忙着彻底打扫房子，希望能够扫除霉运。”

(1) “忙着干……”译为 be busy doing sth.。

(2) “彻底”可用形容词 thorough，也可用副词 thoroughly，因此“彻底打扫房子”既可译为 give the house a thorough cleaning，也可译为 clean the house thoroughly。

(3) “希望能够扫除霉运”用现在分词连缀于 SV 主干之上。

全句译为：

Days before the New Year, every family is busy giving their house a thorough cleaning, hoping to sweep away the ill fortune.

4. “除夕时，全家人齐聚一堂吃年夜饭。”

注意本句中“除夕”的译法。“元旦前夜(12 月 31 日夜)”译为 the New Year's Eve，而中国的“春节前夜(除夕)”则译为 the eve of the Spring Festival。全句译为：

On the eve of the Spring Festival, all the family members come together for a feast.

5. “然后，一家子挨家挨户拜访左邻右舍、亲朋好友。”

“挨家挨户”译为 go from door to door，如：

这个销售人员挨家挨户拜访，希望得到一些订单。The salesman went from door to door, hoping to get some orders.

全句译为：

Then the family go from door to door to visit their relatives, friends and neighbours.

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **日常礼仪**

鲍伯：我的一个亲戚送了我一个很可爱的水果篮。可水果篮送到的时候，很大一部分都坏了。我该告诉他这件事吗？

吉姆：当然应该，不过措辞要委婉些。也就是说，要注意你的语气。你可以这么说："我很喜欢你送我的礼物。但是我担心你会再从那个公司订购东西，所以我想告诉你水果篮到的时候，有些水果已经坏了。我联系了那家公司，他们立刻就给我调换了一份。"

2. **美国国旗**

乔治：据说美国国旗上的 13 条红白相间的条纹表示美国原有州的数目，是真的吗？

汉斯：是的，原来的 13 州。蓝色一角的 50 颗白色星星代表着现在的 50 个州。

乔治：有没有什么国旗法规呢？

汉斯：当然有。比如说，国旗不能用于服装装饰。但是一些人觉得这么做是件很时髦的事情。

3. **圣诞传统**

弗瑞克：玛丽亚，为什么圣诞节时我们要挂花环呢？

玛丽亚：古罗马时代，人们将花环作为礼物互相赠送，也许我们沿袭了这个习俗吧。

弗瑞克：那为什么不用其他植物，而用冬青呢？

玛丽亚：很久以前，北欧的人们在阴沉苦寒的冬天会将冬青摆设在家中。这种植物鲜亮的颜色象征着太阳一定会再次照耀着这片大地。换句话说，冬青能给我们带来希望和欢乐。

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

今天，我们来谈谈美国一些常用词汇的起源。

OK 这个单词 1839 年第一次出现在波士顿的报纸上。隔年，即 1840 年，是美国总统大选年。一位竞选人士的拥戴者们在纽约市成立了一个 OK 俱乐部。虽然那位 OK 政治人士落选了，但是 OK 这个词却得到了强化，从此开始被广泛使用起来。

现在，女士可按照自己的意愿决定称呼是用“夫人”、“小姐”还是“女士”。1920 年，美国妇女终于赢得选举权，然而，这之后很长的一段时间里，她们并未赢得那场争取平等地位和尊重的战役。人们视其婚否称呼女士们为“夫人”和“小姐”。称呼用错还会含有侮辱之意。1952 年，可用于称呼所有女士的缩写“Ms”被推荐使用。

18 世纪，鹿皮被印第安人用在买卖活动中，后来又被用来作为购买其他物品的价值单位。当时，鹿皮被称为“buck”。到了 19 世纪，鹿皮渐渐不再用做交换的中介，然而，“buck”却转义成了美元。

谢谢！

Passage 2

各位老师，各位同学：

非常感谢你们热情的欢迎词。今天我们在此庆祝青年节，我认为了解一下第二次世界大战的历史能使我们更珍惜眼前的幸福。

1939 年 9 月，德国进攻波兰，二战爆发。德国纳粹用闪电战占领了许多国家，整个欧洲大陆只剩下英国孤军奋战，对抗德国及其同盟。

1941 年 12 月 7 日清晨，日本战机轰炸夏威夷的美国海军基地珍珠港。大约 3,000 名美国人死伤，247 架飞机、18 艘战舰被炸毁。翌日，罗斯福总统对日宣战。

1944 年 6 月 6 日著名的诺曼底登陆日战役成为二战的转折点。1945 年 2 月下旬，德军被迫撤到莱茵河对岸。希特勒开枪自杀。1945

年5月8日，德国投降。同年8月14日，日本投降，二战结束。

战争是结束了，但它的恶果却远未终止。从1939年到1945年，61个国家被卷入这场持续了6年的大战。无数家园被毁，2,500多万士兵和老百姓丧生。第二次世界大战是人类历史上规模最大、最残酷的战争，它几乎毁灭了人类。

第二次世界大战是全世界人民的噩梦。现在我们该清醒了！战争不能解决任何问题。理解和合作才是惟一的出路。和平是宝贵的！

谢谢大家！

Passage 3

在美国，人们一年要过上许多节日。

1月1日是元旦，它也是一年伊始。元旦是法定假日，所有的银行、商店和学校都休息。很多人会在下午或晚上邀请他们到家里来。

2月惟一的法定假日是乔治·华盛顿的生日。乔治·华盛顿是2月22日出生的，但我们总是在2月的第三个星期一来庆祝他的诞辰。

春天，4月的某个星期日，我们将迎来复活节。小孩子们相信这一天复活节兔子会出现，还会给他们留下一些蛋。因此，在星期日他们开始了寻蛋游戏。此外，复活节时期的滚蛋游戏也是美国人所青睐的。

7月4日是美国的国庆节。正是在1776年的这一天，当时的殖民地宣布脱离英国的统治，从此独立。如今，每年的7月4日，人们会挂起美国国旗，不少城市还会举行游行活动。入夜之后，更是有烟火表演。

树叶变黄了。秋天到了，是吗？这也就意味着万圣节到了！10月31日这一天，不管小孩还是成人，都可以摆脱平时的生活，彻底放纵一下。这是魔法时刻。灰姑娘、南瓜马车和那只失落的水晶鞋，你会忘记吗？

说到11月，就会联想到感恩节。我想怀特先生在他的历史课上已经给大家说过感恩节的起源和一些传统习惯了。我只希望你们吃烤火鸡时，千万别撑着！

12月31日是除夕，也就是年终岁末了！人们会举办各种晚会，这是传统。大家玩乐到午夜时分，在一片喧嚣声中，快乐地迎接新年。

当然，我们在12月还有一个非常非常重要的全国性节日——圣诞节。下次讲座我就来重点谈谈它。下面，欢迎大家提问。

PART B

Ladies and gentlemen,

Happy Spring Festival!

It is the lunar new year in China today and I'm so glad to introduce some traditional customs to all the friends from all parts of the world.

The Chinese mark the years in a 12-year cycle, in which each year is named after an animal, such as the Rat, the Tiger, the Pig and the Dragon. 2002, the Year of Horse, is an energetic time which is believed to bring about success and achievements.

In China, the New Year holiday usually lasts for a whole month. People buy and share many presents, decorations and clothing. Transportation becomes quite busy because so many people rush back home for a family reunion.

Days before the New Year, every family is busy giving their house a thorough cleaning, hoping to sweep away the ill fortune. And some people will decorate their doors with couplets.

On the eve of the Spring Festival, all the family members come together for a feast. Early the next morning, children greet their parents and are likely to get presents from them. Then the family goes from door to door to visit their relatives, friends and neighbours. Quite often, the older relatives give the child a red envelop with money inside. Why red? This is because in the Chinese culture, the colour Red is lucky and is used for happy occasions, say, the Spring Festival or the traditional wedding. And I've seen today many present here are dressed in red, too.

In closing, I wish all of you good health and the very best of luck in the coming year!

UNIT 11

TRAVEL AND SIGHTSEEING

旅游与观光

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

destination	snack bar	soft berth	retailer
transfer	cruise	Gaelic	coupon
coincidence	breathtaking	discotheque	discount
lobby	snail mail	unprecedented	

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

1. 随着人们生活水平的不断提高，人们的可支配收入和休闲时间也不断增加，旅游也因此越来越受到人们的青睐。
2. 旅游既可以修身养性，陶冶人们的情操，也可以使人们有机会了解异域风情，开阔视野。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **In the air**

(Becky Liu and Peg Marshall are sitting next to each other on the plane.)

Becky：Hi，I'm Becky Liu.

Peg：I'm Peg Marshall.

Becky: So, what's your destination?

Peg: Baltimore — transferring in Detroit.

Becky: What a coincidence! So am I! I'm going to visit some friends. How about you?

Peg: I'm going back home. I was working in Shanghai. But I had fun, too. I believe in mixing business with pleasure.

Becky: Me, too. I'm glad you liked your trip.

Peg: Say, why don't you give me your friends' number? We can get together in Baltimore.

Becky: I'd love that. Here's the number.

2. **In the lobby**

(Susan Limb and Faith Wang are in the lobby of a hotel.)

Susan: Excuse me. Do you know where the snack bar is?

Faith: Actually, I was just on my way there myself. Let's go together.

Susan: Great idea. I'm starving, and it's too late for room service.

Faith: I know! And the restaurant is closed, too.

Susan: Hey, I have an idea. Why don't we eat together?

Faith: Sure. I hate eating alone.

Susan: So what are you doing in Seattle?

Faith: Business trip. I'm from Shanghai.

Susan: I'm working, too. I'm from New York.

Faith: You know, I occasionally go to New York on business.

Susan: Next time you come to New York, I'll show you around.

3. **On the boat**

(Tim Chen and Colin Wood are on the deck of a cruise ship. They are both looking at the water.)

Tim: This view is really breathtaking!

Colin: Tell me about it. I love cruises.

Tim: Oh, do you go on cruises often?

Colin: Whenever I can. I love traveling. By the way, where are you from?

Tim: I'm from China. I live in Shanghai. Have you ever been there?

Colin: No, I've been to Beijing, but never to Shanghai. I'd love to go, though.

Tim: Well, give me your e-mail address. When you come to China next time, we can get together.

Colin: It's a deal. But I have to tell you I don't use the Internet. So you'll have to write me a real letter.

Tim: That's fine. Snail mail is okay with me.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

Thank you so much. But it's really unnecessary for you to take me there. I can always ask the way and show people the address. I've found the Chinese people most friendly and most willing to help. With good feelings on both sides we can easily make ourselves understood.

You know I just can't understand those travelers who stay in five-star hotels and put themselves in the hands of travel agents. Hotels are the same all over the world and you don't see anything of the real China. You are surrounded by foreigners and don't get a chance to mix with the Chinese people.[1]

As for meals, no McDonald's for me.[2] I haven't come all the way to China to eat at a McDonald's.[3] Just show me an ordinary Chinese restaurant where the ordinary people eat. It doesn't matter if they don't have menus in English. I can watch other people eating and point to things I like.

As a seasoned traveler, I prefer to travel by train. It's much more fun traveling by train than by air, besides being much

cheaper. You know the man in the ticket office insisted that I should take the soft berth.[4] People seem to think all foreigners are rich and have money to throw around, but actually I'm only a poor student. Besides, if I took the soft berth, most likely my traveling companions would be foreigners too, so what's the point then? As it turned out I met a lot of interesting people in the hard berth carriage and made many friends.[5] That's the whole point in traveling.

Passage 2

Mayo is one of the wildest of Ireland's counties. Its rolling hills and lonely moorland remain startlingly undeveloped, unpopulated and unspoiled. In many of the sleepy villages which dot the area, life has changed little.[1] And you'll come across small communities where the ancient language Gaelic is still spoken.

While the church is the focus of spiritual life in Ireland, it's the pub that is the focal point for life in the village.[2] Ireland without pubs would be like Saudi Arabia without sand. In villages around Ireland, they wouldn't have discotheques, cinemas. So they come to the pub for their entertainment — the chat and the banter and fun.

You'll always find in an Irish pub a welcome for you. Let it be a stranger or a visitor or a local, they're always full of chat and conversation.[3] Music nights in the pubs in Ireland — it's an experience you'll never ever forget. Bands playing, people out dancing, singing, it's one thing that you'll always remember about Ireland.

In Ireland, it doesn't take long for you to feel as if you are part of the crowd, and the locals will happily show you the steps. Dancing and singing often continue well into the night, so just don't plan on going to bed too early.[4]

Passage 3

England is not a big country: from north to south and from east to west it is only about three hundred miles across. But for a small country it has a surprising range of climate. People who have never

visited England, or who have visited only one part of it, often make the mistake of thinking that it is a cold and wet country. Except for the summer months of June to September, this is probably true of the north of England and the Midlands.[1] In the south, however, the climate is much more pleasant. One result is that when people retire from a job in the north they often prefer to move down to the milder south.

Perhaps the warmest part of the country is the southwest, which consists of the counties of Devon and Cornwall.[2] The warm Gulf Stream flows across the North Atlantic Ocean from the Gulf of Mexico and makes the coastal regions of southwest quite warm. Palm trees, bamboo and many semi-tropical plants grow well in the southwest of England. Flowers and vegetables ripen as much as a month earlier than those elsewhere.[3] Farmers in the area obtain a higher price for their vegetables and flowers because they are already earlier. In winter there may be several feet of snow in other parts of England but there will probably be no snow at all in the southwest. This may be one of the reasons why the southwest is one of England's most popular holiday areas.

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

各位女士，各位先生，请允许我作一下自我介绍。[1] 我叫唐伟，是中国国际旅行社的导游。欢迎各位来到上海。能在上海与你们见面，我十分高兴。我想大家经过这一段长距离旅行之后一定很累了。我们现在就直接去宾馆，大家可以在那里好好休息一下。

明天上午 7 点在宾馆二楼用早餐，7:30 我们先去豫园参观。豫园建于中国明代，原是一座十分美丽的私家花园。[2] 花园距今已有 400 余年历史。园地面积两万多平方米。[3] 园内各景点有回廊曲径可通。自 1961 年开放之日起，豫园已成为中外游客参观游览的场所。

下午是自由购物时间。上海素有"购物天堂"、"东方巴黎"的美称[4]，旅游者到了上海除了领略大都市的风光外，大都会疯狂购物一番。中华商业第一街——南京路，是每个旅游者的必到之地。高雅商业文化街——淮海路，吸引了一大批充满时尚气息的都市人。四川北

路是一条工薪阶层的购物街，人气非凡。

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. What a coincidence!
2. I just can't understand those travelers who stay in five-star hotels and put themselves in the hands of travel agents.
3. It doesn't matter if they don't have menus in English.
4. It's much more fun traveling by train than by air, besides being much cheaper.
5. As it turned out I met a lot of interesting people in the hard berth carriage and made many friends.
6. You'll be surprised how often the answer is yes.
7. More than ever, it pays to change services and brands.
8. As well as a strong sense of tradition, everywhere you go in Mayo, you can't but notice the depth and significance of Ireland's devout faith.
9. Ireland without pubs would be like Saudi Arabia without sand.

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. You are surrounded by foreigners and don't get a chance to mix with the Chinese people. 你周围都是外国人，就没有机会和中国人交往。

   mix 意为"与人相处融洽"。如：

   His companions mixed freely and joyously with the natives. 他的

伙伴们自由而快乐的与土著人融合在一起。

He doesn't mix well. 他与人处得不好。

2. As for meals, no McDonald's for me. 说到吃饭，我不吃麦当劳。
as for 意为"关于"，as to 也解释为"关于"。但 as to 可以跟在名词后面，作修饰语。
As for the burglar, he escaped through the window. 至于那个贼，他跳窗逃走了。
I have no doubts as to your ability. 对于你的能力，我毫不怀疑。
I'm willing to read the book, but as to publishing it, it is a different matter. 我很乐意读这本书，但至于出版这本书，那是另外一回事了。

3. I haven't come all the way to China to eat at a McDonald's. 我千里迢迢来到中国不是来吃麦当劳的。
all the way 意为"完全地，自始至终"。如：
The door opened all the way. 门大开着。
He was all the way back to normal. 他完全恢复正常了。
I ran all the way to the office. 我一路奔到办公室。

4. You know the man in the ticket office insisted that I should take the soft berth. 你知道，售票处的人坚持要我坐软卧。
insist 意为"坚持"。如：
We insist on/upon self-reliance. 我们坚持自力更生。
We all insist that we not rest until we finish the work. 大家都坚决要求不完工就不休息。

5. As it turned out I met a lot of interesting people in the hard berth carriage and made many friends. 实际上，在硬卧车厢我遇见了很多挺有意思的人，交了许多朋友。
turn out 意为"结果"，常与 to, that 连用。如：
Things turned out to be exactly as the professor had foreseen. 事情正如教授所预见的那样。
The plan turned out a failure. 这项计划结果归于失败。

Passage 2

1. In many of the sleepy villages which dot the area, life has

changed little. 散布在这个地区里的许多静谧村落，生活形态并没有多少改变。

(1) dot 意为“点缀或似用点布满”。如：

Campfires, like red, peculiar blossoms, dotted the night. 营火像红色的、别致的花朵点缀着黑夜。

(2) sleepy 意为“犯困的，静寂的”。asleep 意为“处在睡眠状态的，正睡着”，只能放在系动词或名词的后面。如：

I felt sleepy all day. 我整天都犯困。

This is a sleepy little village. 这是一座静寂无生气的小村。

He is asleep. 他睡着了。

2. While the church is the focus of spiritual life in Ireland, it's the pub that is the focal point for life in the village. 教堂是爱尔兰人精神生活的重心，而酒吧则是村落生活的焦点。

(1) while 意为“然而，而”，连接两个意思相反的句子。如：

The soles are leather, while the uppers are canvas. 鞋跟是皮的，而鞋面是帆布的，

(2) focus 意为“中心，焦点”。如：

Because of his strange clothes, he immediately became the focus of attention when he entered the office. 他由于服装奇特，一走进办公室便成了大家关注的中心。

China is the focus of world's attention. 中国是世界注意的中心。

3. Let it be a stranger or a visitor or a local, they're always full of chat and conversation. 无论陌生人、访客，还是本地人，都可到此聊上一聊，畅谈一番。

(1) full of 意为“充满”。如：

Her eyes were full of tears. 她的眼里充满泪水。

That political statesman is full of ambition. 那个政治家雄心勃勃。

This is a book full of errors. 这是一本错误百出的书。

(2) local 意为“本地人”。如：

Foreign firms employed nearly 10,000 locals. 外国商号雇佣了一万名本地人。

4. Dancing and singing often continue well into the night, so just don't plan on going to bed too early. 跳舞、唱歌常常持续到深夜，所以别打算太早上床睡觉。

Passage 3

1. Except for the summer months of June to September, this is probably true of the north of England and the Midlands. 英国北部和中部地区，在夏季 7 月到 9 月以外的日子里，可能确实如此。
   (1) except 意为"除了"，作介词，后接名词，常连接同一类型的事物；作连词，后接从句。except for 意为"除了"，作介词词组，后接名词。
   Every one of us, except him, went to watch the basketball match. 除他以外，我们都去观看了篮球比赛。
   Except for one old lady, the bus was empty. 公共汽车上要不是坐了一位老太太就是空的。
   I would buy the suit, except that it costs too much. 如果不是它售价太高的话，我本想买下那件衣服。
   (2) true of 意为"对……适用，符合于"。如：
   Probably the same is true of social work. 也许社会福利工作也是这样吧。
2. Perhaps the warmest part of the country is the southwest, which consists of the counties of Devon and Cornwall. 也许英国最暖和的地方是西南地区，那里由德文县和康沃尔县组成。
   (1) consist of 意为"组成，构成，包括，由……组成"。如：
   The United Kingdom consists of Great Britain and Northern Ireland. 联合王国包括大不列颠与北爱尔兰。
   His job consists of helping old people who live alone. 他的工作包括帮助照顾独居的老人。
   (2) consist in 意为"在于"。如：
   The beauty of the plan consists in its simplicity. 这个计划妙就妙在简明扼要。
   (3) consist with 意为"一致，符合"。如：

Theory should consist with practice. 理论应与实践相一致。

3. Flowers and vegetables ripen as much as a month earlier than those elsewhere. 各种鲜花和蔬菜要比其他地区早熟一个月。
在句中，"as much as"用来修饰"a month"。
ripen 意为"成熟"。如：
The tomatoes ripened on the vine. 番茄在藤上熟了。
Their acquaintance soon ripened into friendship. 他们认识不久就成为朋友。
The sun ripens the corn. 太阳使谷物成熟。

PART B

1. "请允许我作一下自我介绍。"：Allow me to introduce myself.
也可译成 Please let me introduce myself to you. 或 I'd like to introduce myself.
2. "豫园建于中国明代，原是一座十分美丽的私家花园。"：Yu Garden was built in the Ming Dynasty. It was originally a beautiful private garden.
建造，修建：build，set up，erect。私家花园：private garden，又如：皇家花园或御花园：royal garden。
"原是一座十分美丽的私家花园"有多种译法。如：
The origin of Yu Garden was a beautiful private garden./Yu Garden originated from a private garden.
3. "园地面积两万多平方米。"：It covers an area of over 20,000 square meters.
"占地面积"通常译成"cover an area of"。此句也可译成：It stretches for 20,000 square meters.
4. "有……的美称"。
此结构可译作"has been famed as"，也可译作"has enjoyed the reputation as"。

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **在飞机上**

   （刘贝琪和佩格·玛歇尔在飞机上比邻而坐。）

   贝琪：你好，我是刘贝琪。

   佩格：我叫佩格·玛歇尔。

   贝琪：那么，你去哪儿？

   佩格：我到巴尔第摩——在底特律转机。

   贝琪：真巧！我也是。我要去拜访几位朋友。那你呢？

   佩格：我回家。此前我到上海去工作。但也玩得很开心。我相信工作与娱乐兼顾的说法。

   贝琪：我也是。很高兴你喜欢这趟旅行。

   佩格：你要不要把你朋友的电话号码给我呢？我们可以在巴尔第摩聚一聚。

   贝琪：我很乐意。给你号码。

2. **在大厅里**

   （苏珊·林姆和王菲诗在一家旅馆的大厅里。）

   苏珊：对不起，请问你知道小吃部在哪里吗？

   菲诗：老实说，我也正要去呢。我们一起去吧。

   苏珊：太好了。我饿死了，现在叫客房服务又太晚了。

   菲诗：我知道。而且餐厅也关了。

   苏珊：嘿，这样吧，我们一起吃，好吗？

   菲诗：当然好了。我讨厌一个人吃饭。

   苏珊：你来西雅图是做什么的？

   菲诗：出差。我是从上海来的。

   苏珊：我也是来工作的。我从纽约来。

   菲诗：你知道吗，我偶尔也会去纽约出差。

   苏珊：下次你来纽约，我带你到处走走。

3. **在船上**

(陈提姆和考林·伍德在游船的甲板上。他们两人都望着海。)

提姆：这里的景色实在是太美了！

考林：可不是吗。我真喜欢坐船旅行。

提姆：噢，你常常坐船旅行吗？

考林：一有机会就坐。我喜欢旅行。顺便问一下，你是从哪儿来的？

提姆：我来自中国。我住在上海。你去过上海吗？

考林：没有。我去过北京，但从未去过上海。不过我很想去看看。

提姆：那么，把你的电子邮件地址给我吧。下次你来上海，我们可以聚一聚。

考林：一言为定。但是我得告诉你，我不上网。你得写信邮寄给我。

提姆：那好。普通的邮寄对我来说也没问题。

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

太感谢你了。不过你真的不必要带我去那里。我可以问路，可以把地址给别人看。我发现中国人非常友好，很乐于助人。只要双方都怀着友好的感情，我们可以很容易地彼此理解。

你知道，我真不理解那些住五星级饭店，把自己交给旅行社的游客。饭店在世界各地都是一样的，但你就无法了解真实的中国。你周围都是外国人，就没有机会和中国人交往。

说到吃饭，我不吃麦当劳。我千里迢迢来到中国不是来吃麦当劳的。帮我找一家大家都去的普通的中国餐馆就行了。餐馆里要是没有英文菜单也没关系。我可以看别人在吃什么，我喜欢什么就点什么。

作为一个有经验的旅行者，我更喜欢乘火车旅行。坐火车比坐飞机有趣多了，而且还便宜。你知道，售票处的人坚持要我坐软卧。人们似乎觉得外国人都有钱，可以随便挥霍。其实我只是个穷学生。而且如果我坐软卧，我的旅伴多半都是外国人。那还有什么意思？实际

上，在硬卧车厢我遇见了很多挺有意思的人，交了许多朋友，这才是旅游的全部意义所在。

Passage 2

梅佑郡是爱尔兰郡县中最荒凉的一个。这里有起伏的丘陵和寂静的沼泽，几乎完全未经开发，人烟稀少，未遭破坏。散布在这个地区里的许多静谧村落，生活形态并没有多少改变，你会发现有些小社区还说着古老的盖尔语。

教堂是爱尔兰人精神生活的重心，而酒吧则是村落生活的焦点。要是爱尔兰没有酒吧，那就像沙特阿拉伯没有沙一样。在爱尔兰的村落里，没有迪斯科舞厅或电影院，所以上酒吧就是他们的消遣——来这里聊天、谈笑、找乐子。

爱尔兰酒吧的大门永远都为你敞开，无论陌生人、访客，还是本地人，都可到此聊上一聊，畅谈一番。爱尔兰酒吧的音乐之夜也是一种永远难忘的体验。乐团演奏、大家出来跳舞、唱歌，这是爱尔兰让人永远记得的地方。

在爱尔兰，要融入人群并不需要很长时间，当地人很乐意教你舞步。跳舞、唱歌常常持续到深夜，所以别打算太早上床睡觉。

Passage 3

英国并不大，从北至南，由东到西，只有 300 英里的跨度。但这样一个小国却有着令人惊奇的气候变化。从未到过英国的人，或只游览过其中一部分的人常误认为那是一个寒冷、潮湿的国度。英国北部和中部地区，在夏季 7 月到 9 月以外的日子里，可能确实如此。可南部的气候可要宜人得多。于是北方人常乐于在退休后搬到暖和的南方来。

也许英国最暖和的地方是西南地区，那里由德文县和康沃尔县组成。墨西哥暖流从墨西哥湾流出，流经北大西洋，温暖了西南沿海区域。棕榈树、竹子和很多亚热带的植物在西南部生长茂盛，各种鲜花和蔬菜要比其他地区早熟一个月。因为上市早，所以该地区农民种植的蔬菜、鲜花的价格要比其他地区高。冬天，英国其他地方的积雪深有几尺，但是西南部可能根本就不下雪。这可能就是为什么西南部是英国最受欢迎的度假胜地的原因之一。

PART B

Ladies and gentlemen, allow me to introduce myself. My name is Tang Wei, your tourist guide with China International Travel Service. Welcome to Shanghai. We are glad to have you here. You must be very tired after such a long trip. So we are now going straight to the hotel. You can have a good rest there.

You will have your breakfast at 7:00 tomorrow morning on the second floor of your hotel. After that, we'll leave for Yu Garden at 7:30. Yu Garden was built in the Ming Dynasty. It was originally a beautiful private garden. It has a long history of more than 400 years and covers an area of 20,000 square metres. The scenic spots in the garden can all be reached by curving corridors and twisting passages. Since it was opened to the public in 1961, the garden has remained a popular place for tourists all over the world to visit.

You can make your shopping in the afternoon. Shanghai has been famed as "the Shopping Paradise" and "the Oriental Paris" in history. Visitors come to Shanghai with a purpose of appreciating the beautiful urban scenery, as well as shopping in its various kinds of shops and stores. Nanjing Road, China's No. 1 commercial street, is a must for all visitors; Huaihai Road, an elegant and cultural commercial street, attracts thousands of young people who search for the latest fashion trends, and North Sichuan Road, a popular commercial street, is specially favored by the working class.

UNIT 12

ENTERTAINMENT AND MASS MEDIA

娱乐与大众传媒

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

echo	sketch	heroine	laptop-toting
loch	barnyard	legend	megabits
seal	Disneyland	Web page	ultimate
unfavourable	cinematic	dorm	maple
unpredictable	full-length	upgrade	
basically			

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

1. 美国的电影类型众多，有：science-fiction-adventure(科幻冒险片)，suspence-horror(悬念惊险片)，action-adventure(冒险动作片)，suspence-thriller(悬念惊险片)，family(家庭伦理片)，romance-tragedy(爱情悲剧片)，romance-comedy(爱情喜剧片)等。
2. *The Lord of the Rings*：《魔戒首部曲——指环王》(电影名)；*Harry Potter*：《哈利·波特》(电影名)。
3. Westlife：西城男孩，英国演唱组合，有多首排行榜冠军单曲。*My love* 是该组合脍炙人口的一首歌曲。
4. couch potato：整天赖在沙发上看电视的人(因常看电视不活动，

身材走样）。

5. square eyes：方形的眼睛（形容因常看电视，眼睛变得和电视机的形状一样）。
6. Pinocchio，Dumbo，Cinderella，Peter Pan，Tarzan，Mickey Mouse，Donald Duck，Snow White and Seven Dwarfs，the Three Little Pigs，the Lion King — Simba，*Toy Story* I，II，the Lost Empire — Atlantis，Mulan：
   以上均为迪斯尼制作室作品及其动画角色。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **Movies**

A：How about going to the movies?

B：Great! I've got the newspaper in my bag. Wait a minute. I'll check the movie reviews to see what good movies are showing.

A：Okay. Check to see if there are any horror movies showing. I like those. I think horrors are exciting.

B：No. They nearly frighten me to death. Try some other.

A：Alright. But we're not going to see another tragedy movie. I fell asleep during the last one as it was so boring.

B：How about a romance movie，a love story? And would this science-fiction movie be alright? One of my friends said the special effects were wonderful.

A：No，I usually find them too far-fetched，impossible to believe. I prefer an action-adventure movie.

B：Come on! Let's make a decision. *The Lord of the Rings* or *Harry Potter*，please?

2. **Karaoke**

A：Encore. Encore. You sing well.

B：Well，the echo and the stereo system helped a lot. This high-tech equipment makes my voice sound alright.

A: You're being modest. Pass me the catalog, please. I'll see which song I should choose ... Thanks ... Wow, this place does have a large selection. I don't know which to choose.

B: Pick one that you know. What about Westlife?

A: Marvellous! Ok, this one — *My love*.

B: I've got the remote control. Tell me the selection number and I'll key it in.

A: It's V122. Where's the microphone? Now it's my chance to be the star.

3. **Yahoo by phone**

A: Do you yahoo?

B: Not yet. I'm on the go and can't afford the time to check my email.

A: Why not try yahoo by phone? You don't have to have a computer to access the Internet or a mouse click. All you need is a touch tone.

B: A touch tone?

A: Yes. Here is how it works. Just dial 1800-myyahoo, punch in your code and listen.

B: What can I get on the phone?

A: You can call in and listen to your email, and even stock quotes, news and sports scores.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

We know, the British enjoy the family outing. Most people choose well-known beauty spots or seaside beaches. Others prefer a lonely place, where there are few people. In recent years the British have developed several new holiday habits, the most interesting among

which is the so-called holiday camps. They are made up of many small and comfortable suburban houses instead of tents.

For most Americans, they choose to travel either within the United States or to other countries. American major cities, as most popular tourist attractions, offer much for tourists to see. However, camping in a rural area or in a quiet valley has become extremely attractive recently.

And we can't turn a blind eye to the fact that Europe's theme park playground has emerged as a new hot destination for entertainment.[1] Nearly 160 million people a year go to amusement parks in Europe and a recent survey found that nearly half of them are adults who go there without children.

The attendance at many amusement and theme parks has dropped this year in America[2], especially in some holiday destination centers run by Disney and Universal. But despite such unfavourable factors as the unpredictable weather and slowing economies,[3] the theme park industry in Europe is growing. In Europe there are over 200 theme parks, many of which are small privately owned businesses. They attract 160 million visitors annually who spend over $2 billion. Europeans on average spend $13 per park visit, while Americans pay nearly three times as much. The industry of theme parks has something for everyone because basically people need to be entertained.

Passage 2

Welcome to our Disney Cartoon Show. Here you can not only appreciate Pinocchio, Dumbo, Cinderella, Peter Pan, these cartoon personalities who were born in 1940s and 1950s, but also some new stars born in the 21st century such as our jungle hero Tarzan. Of course, you'll also meet our brave and straight Mickey Mouse and his partner Donald Duck.

Who invented these lovely characters?

Walt Disney was born in Chicago, in 1901. As a small boy,

Walt Disney drew sketches of the barnyard creatures and the scenes he saw around the farm. In 1923, he, together with his brother Joy, set up Disney Studio with a capital base of $280. On November 18, 1928, Mickey Mouse, the most famous of the Disney cartoon characters, made his debut in New York City.[1] Now we know him to be the little gentlemouse. Mickey Mouse has appeared on thousands of merchandise items, and nowadays it is the chief greeter at the Disney theme parks.

Then, when did the first Disneyland open?

Walt Disney chose California as the first site to build his famous amusement parks. Since the park opened in 1955, it has become a part of the visit of nearly every traveler to California for the first time. An average of 50,000 visitors come to the park every day. The first Disneyland outside of the United States was opened in Japan in 1983. As you know, another one in HongKong is under construction now.[2]

Ladies and Gentlemen, the Disney Studio produces feature-length cartoons periodically and we have always been fascinated and delighted with them. Snow White and her Seven Dwarfs, the Three little Pigs, the Lion King — Simba, the computer-animated *Toy Story* I, II, the Lost Empire — Atlantis, how amazing! Among them, Mulan, a character based on an ancient Chinese legend, presents us one of a new breed of Disney heroes who have surfaced since the 1990s. She is braver, more independent, and less focused on winning a husband than earlier Disney animated maidens were. You may be fully aware of this when you watch it in a moment.[3]

Enjoy yourselves in our show!

Passage 3

Dear faculty and students,

Ladies and gentlemen,

It is my honor to have been invited here to address you on the topic of "Going Online Wirelessly".[1]

The Internet is about to start showing up in new places.

Wireless Internet technology is booming, including cell phones that call up Web pages, take in emails, and keep your calendar; pagers that send and receive email and go on the net; palm computers with a wireless connection to the office or the Internet, and some other devices. The popular words here are "anything, anywhere".

Let's take colleges and universities for an example, though this technology is still new on campus.

Some colleges and universities in America have begun campus-wide wireless service since last fall because they've found going wireless cheaper than extending wires to dorm rooms located blocks away from campus. A small college can now set up an entire campus for a few hundred thousand dollars, far less than the cost upgrading older buildings or extending wiring to every classroom desk. Larger schools can do so for a few million dollars.

A laptop-toting student who wants to connect can buy a wireless card for about $150, or rent a wireless-ready laptop for $450 a semester. Laptop computers connected to wireless networks give students ultimate mobility.[2] They can check email, chat with friends and otherwise stay on the net while they roam about campus. Look! Under a maple tree, a sophomore is spreading out a blanket, turning on a laptop computer and starting to surf the Web. No messy wring required. Students can log on from almost anywhere — outdoors, in classrooms, in the basketball stands. Also wireless networks let students collaborate more naturally in small groups to find online resources during a class.[3]

Sure, the technology has drawbacks, such as the potential for greater security risks and congestion. In addition, laptops are used to catch up on personal email, even checking baseball scores during class.

Nevertheless, analysts say wireless networking will become a $2.2 billion industry by 2003, nearly three times the $800 million this year and it will likely become commonplace at hotels, airports and some businesses.

Then what are you waiting for? Just drop the line!

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

在这个信息时代，你怎么获取信息呢?

你也许会说，听收音机，看电视，或是看报纸呀。

纸张在很长一段时期一直是信息的主要载体。然而，随着电脑和网络技术的飞速发展，它却面临着电子出版物的挑战 。电子出版物的诞生及其发展对出版业乃至整个社会产生了深远的影响。[1]

那么，什么是电子出版物?

一般说来，它指采用数字格式运载信息的大众传媒，而且还能根据需求进行复制。

今天，我们要集中了解一种流行的电子出版物——网络型。

电子简报是其中一种电子出版物。它是一种在网上进行编辑的报纸，通过因特网可在网络终端阅读。[2] 用户上网后可阅读他们感兴趣的东西，如果愿意，还可拷贝。另外，电子出版物能高速提供巨大的信息流，所以现代人对其十分满意。目前，800 多家报刊加入了网上电子简报，包括世界闻名的《泰晤士报》和《华尔街日报》。

因特网也给图书馆带来了革命性的变化。[3] 例如，华盛顿国会图书馆目前已将 210,000 份文件“电子化”。这些电子信息可以传递给全世界的读者。在中国，只需在键盘上键入一些词，你就可以进入北京大学或清华大学的目录。[4] 人人都可享用网络上的数据库。使用一台联网的个人电脑，你就可以浏览数据、书籍、杂志和目录。

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. I prefer comedies to tragedies and this comedy had me laughing all the way through it.
2. Those special effects weren't too good for a science fiction.
3. I prefer talk shows to have a bit of humor in them and also you can learn things from them.
4. Documentaries are educational television and just now I watched a good documentary about World War II.
5. Why do they always make the best programs clash?

6. She has been becoming a couch potato since she bought a TV.
7. If you watch any more，you'll get square eyes.
8. Games shows are good fun，and a very good way to relax.
9. Please follow me. Your seat is on the sixth row，the eighth seat from the aisle.
10. Can I get a refund for these tickets for tomorrow's concert?

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. And we can't turn a blind eye to the fact that Europe's theme park playground has emerged as a new hot destination for entertainment. 我们不能忽视这样一个事实：欧洲的主题公园已成为人们游乐的新宠。

   turn a blind eye to 意为："视而不见，听之任之"。如：

   The local authority shouldn't turn a blind eye to the worsening traffic problem. 当地政府不应该对日益恶化的交通问题视而不见。

   He parked his car in a "disabled" space，tuning a blind eye to the sign. 他把车停在了残疾人专用区，对警示牌视而不见。

   与此表达方式极为接近的还有 turn a deaf ear to，意为"充耳不闻，置若罔闻"。如：

   The tyrant turned a deaf ear to the public's request for more democracy. 这个专制统治者对公众要求更多民主的呼声置若罔闻。

2. The attendance at many amusement and theme parks has dropped this year in America. 今年美国很多游乐场和主题公园

的入场率下降。

attendance 意为“出席，参加”。如：

Attendance at the trade fair rose this year. 今年参加交易会的人数增加了。

Attendance at Monday's conference is compulsory. 周一的会议必须参加。

3. But despite such unfavourable factors as the unpredictable weather and slowing economies, ... 但是尽管有天气变幻莫测和经济增长速度减缓等不利因素，……

(1) despite 意为“尽管，不顾，纵然”。despite 和 in spite of 同义，两者后面都可跟名词或名词短语作宾语，也可以跟由 what 引导的名词性从句。如：

Despite the cold weather, the pop singer came onto the stage wearing very thin clothes. 尽管天气寒冷，这位流行歌手还是穿着单薄的服装走上了舞台。

Despite/In spite of what the doctor warned him, he kept drinking heavily. 他不顾医生对他的警告，仍然酗酒。

(2) unpredictable 意为“不可预见的，无法预料的，变幻莫测的”。如：

Some stock prices are largely unpredictable. 有些股票的价格在很大程度上是无法预测的。

The hours of the job you are applying for are somehow unpredictable. 你申请的这份工作的工作时间是不定的。

Passage 2

1. ... Mickey Mouse, ... made his debut in New York City. ……米老鼠在纽约市首次亮相。

make one's debut 意为“首次在公众场合出现”。如：

He's been gaining popularity since he made his debut five years ago. 出道五年来，他的人气不断上升。

The music composer will make his debut as a singer at the New Year's concert. 这位作曲家将在新年音乐会上首次作为歌手登台。

2. As you know, another one in Hong Kong is under construction now. 大家都知道，目前香港的迪斯尼乐园也在建设之中。

construction 意为“建造，构筑”。如：

The tower is a marvelous work of engineering and construction. 这座塔是工程学和建筑施工的杰作。

Due to the outbreak of SARS, the building which should have been completed according to the former schedule is now still under construction. 原计划本该完工的大楼由于 SARS 爆发，现在仍然在建。

3. You may be fully aware of this when you watch it in a moment. 稍后大家观看此片时一定可以充分感受到这一点。

be aware of 意为“知道，意识到”。如：

I'm well aware of the risk, but I have no choice. 我完全明白这样做的风险，但我别无选择。

be aware 后面除了跟 of 短语，也可以跟从句。be aware 的否定形式是 be unaware。如：

The driver was unaware that his car was parked on a double yellow line. 司机没意识到自己把车停在了黄色双线上。

Are you aware how much the fine for drunken driving is? 你知道酒后驾车要罚多少款吗？

要表示“知道”的程度，可以在 aware 前面添加形容词如 fully, well, acutely 等。

Passage 3

1. It is my honor to have been invited here to address you on the topic of “Going Online Wirelessly”. 非常荣幸应邀向各位发表讲话，我的题目是“无线上网”。

address 在这里意为“向……讲话，做演讲”，它也可作名词，表“演讲，讲话”。如：

She addressed the meeting with fire and passion. 她充满激情地在会上发言。

The fire in her address inspired all the audience. 她充满激情的演讲激励了每一位听众。

address somebody on ... 意为“就……发表讲话”。如：

The university president addressed the faculty and students on the practicability of the new academic credit system. 大学校长向全体教职员工和学生做了关于新学分制的可行性报告。

address 除了此义外，还有“称呼”的意思。如：

She prefers to be addressed as Ms Green. 她喜欢被称呼为格林女士。

2. Laptop computers connected to wireless networks give students ultimate mobility. 与无线网络工程相连的手提电脑赋予学生无穷的机动性。

mobility 意为 “流动性，移动性”。如：

With the aeroplane, people achieve a physical mobility never before dreamed of. 有了飞机，人们就获得了以前连想也不敢想的活动能力。

It is usually harder for young men from lower class to obtain upward social mobility. 通常对来自下层社会的年青人来说，要获得更高的社会地位更困难。

ultimate 意为“最终的，终极的，基本的”。如：

No doubt the ultimate responsibility for the current conflict lies within the aggressor. 毫无疑问，目前冲突的最终责任在于入侵者。

As an athlete, his ultimate goal is to win the world championship. 作为一名运动员，他最终的目标是拿世界冠军。

ultimate 也可以做名词。如：

The wig is the ultimate in ridiculousness. 那副假发真是可笑之极。

3. Also wireless networks let students collaborate more naturally in small groups to find online resources during a class. 而且无线网络工程还能让学生在课堂的小组活动中更自如地合作来获取网上信息。

collaborate 意为 “合作 ”。如：

A Hong Kong company collaborated with a mainland firm to develop the product. 一家香港公司和一家大陆公司合作开发了这

个产品。

The American and Canadian police successfully collaborated in catching the international terrorists. 美国和加拿大警方成功地合作抓获了国际恐怖分子。

PART B

1. “电子出版物的诞生及其发展对出版业乃至整个社会产生了深远的影响。” The advent and growth of electronic publication has exerted a profound impact on the publishing industry and even on society as a whole.

   (1) 诞生可译为“advent, arrival, coming into being, invention”。如：

   蒸汽机的出现给整个人类的生活带来了巨大的变化。The advent of the steam engine brought about great changes to the life of human beings.

   (2)对……产生影响可译为“have/exert an impact/an effect/influence on/upon”。如：

   禁毒活动对年轻人产生了相当大的影响。The anti-drug campaign has had quite an impact on young people.

   燃油泄漏对环境有着灾难性的影响。The oil leak has had a disastrous effect on the environment.

   你能否用你对他的影响力，说服他放弃那种念头? Can you exert your influence on him and persuade him to abandon that idea?

2. “它是一种在网上进行编辑的报纸，通过因特网可在网络终端阅读。” It (news bulletin) is actually newspapers edited on PCs, transmitted through the Internet, and read on network terminals.

   (1) 编辑可译为“edit”。如：

   编辑一部长 10 分钟的片子，你可能要花上一星期的时间。You can probably expect to edit a ten-minute film in about a week.

   平均而言，每英尺编辑好的片子需要 12 英尺未经编辑的片

子。On average for every foot of edited film, you need twelve times as much unedited film.

编辑/编辑人员可译为"editor"。如：

在安静地坐下来轻轻松松地欣赏电影之前，电影编辑有很多事要做。The film editor has a lot to do before he can sit down quietly with his feet up and enjoy watching the film.

(2) 通过……(传送/传输)可译为"transmit"。如：

信号是通过人造卫星传送到一系列接收站的。The signals are transmitted through man-made satellites to relay stations.

(3) 终端可译为 "terminal"。如：

数据通信终端装置的停运导致了一系列问题。The breakdown of data communication terminals caused a series of problems.

3. "因特网也给图书馆带来了革命性的变化。" In addition, Internet has brought revolutionary changes to libraries.

(1) 也可译为"also, too, in addition, besides, apart from"。

(2) 带来可译为 "lead to, cause, bring, result in"。如：

没料到减税对这家公司没有带来任何好处。It was unexpected that the tax deduction didn't bring any benefit to the company.

4. "在中国，只需在键盘上键入一些词，你就可以进入北京大学或清华大学的目录。" In China, you key some words in the keyboard and can get into the catalog in Beijing University or Tsinghua University.

这句话还可译成 In China, key some words in the keyboard, and you can get into the catalog in Beijing University or Tsinghua University. 或者 In China, just key some words in the keyboard and you can get into the catalog in Beijing University or Tsinghua University. 或者 In China, you only have to key some words in the keyboard, then you can get into the catalog in Beijing University or Tsinghua University.

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **电影**

   A：去看场电影，怎么样？

   B：好啊！我包里有张报纸。等会儿！我看一下电影简介，看看有什么好电影上映。

   A：好的。找找看有没有恐怖片。我喜欢恐怖片，看起来很刺激。

   B：不行。恐怖片简直吓死人。试试别的吧。

   A：可以啊！但是千万别再看悲剧片了，上次那部乏味透顶，我都睡着了。

   B：那爱情片呢？这部科幻片行吗？我的一个朋友说里面的特技很精彩。

   A：不，我觉得科幻片太牵强，令人难以置信。我更青睐冒险动作片。

   B：好了好了！定下来吧，是看《指环王》还是《哈利·波特》？

2. **卡拉 OK**

   A：再来一首，再来一首，你唱得真好。

   B：哦，是回声和立体声音响帮了不少忙。这种高科技设备使我的声音听起来不错。

   A：你太谦虚了。请把目录递给我。我也来选一首吧……谢谢。哇，选择余地真大，真不知挑哪一首。

   B：挑首你知道的。西城男孩的，怎么样？

   A：太好了。就这首吧，《至爱》。

   B：遥控器在我这儿。告诉我选曲号码，我来输入。

   A：V122。麦克风在哪儿？现在是我成为明星的机会了。

3. **电话雅虎行**

   A：你上雅虎网了吗？

   B：还没呢。我忙个不停，根本抽不出时间来查看电子邮件。

   A：试试电话雅虎行吧！你无需用电脑上网，也不用鼠标，只要你

说话字正腔圆。

B：字正腔圆？

A：是的。是这么回事：你只需拨通 1800-myyhaoo，输入你的密码就可以听了。

B：电话里我能听到些什么呢？

A：你打个电话就可以听到你的电子邮件内容，甚至听股票报价、新闻和体育比赛报导。

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

我们知道，英国人喜欢举家出游。许多人选择知名的景点和海滩。有些人偏好人迹罕至的僻静之地。近年来，英国人又兴起了几种新的度假习惯，其中最有趣的是一种所谓的假日营地。这些营地全然不是帐篷式的，而是由很多小型但舒适的郊外房子组成。

对大多数美国人来说，他们喜欢在国内或国外旅游 。作为人们旅游的热点，美国的大城市确实让游客们大饱眼福，然而，近来在郊外或在宁静的山谷中野营也显得极富吸引力。

我们不能忽视这样一个事实：欧洲的主题公园已成为人们游乐的新宠。每年约有 1.6 亿人光顾欧洲的游乐场。最近的调查表明，几乎半数的游客是没有带小孩同行的成年人。

今年美国很多游乐场和主题公园的入场率下降，尤其是迪斯尼和环球的一些度假中心。但是尽管有天气变幻莫测和经济增长速度减缓等不利因素，欧洲的主题公园仍在增长。在欧洲有 200 多个主题公园，大部分是私人拥有，规模很小。它们每年吸引 1.6 亿多游客，消费总额超过 20 亿美元。欧洲人每次游览主题公园时平均消费 13 美元，而美国人的开销几乎三倍于此数额。主题公园能为每个人都带来一些满足，因为，基本上人人都需要玩乐。

Passage 2

欢迎来到我们的迪斯尼动画片展。你们在这儿欣赏到的不仅有诞

生于上世纪四五十年代的皮诺曹、小飞象、灰姑娘和小飞侠，还有21世纪的新明星们，比如我们的森林英雄泰山。当然，大家还可以见到我们勇敢正直的米老鼠和他的搭档唐老鸭。

谁创造了这些可爱的角色呢?

沃尔特·迪斯尼1901年出生于芝加哥。孩提时代，他就常以谷仓里的动物和农场周围的景色作画。1923年，沃尔特和他的兄弟罗伊以280美元的基本资本，创立了迪斯尼制作室。1928年11月18日，迪斯尼动画角色中名声最响的米老鼠在纽约市初次亮相。现在我们都知道这位小绅士老鼠。米老鼠出现在几千种商品上，它也是迪斯尼主题公园目前最重要的迎客形象。

那么，第一个迪斯尼乐园是于何时开放的呢?

沃尔特·迪斯尼选择加利福尼亚作为第一站来兴建著名的迪斯尼乐园。自1955年迪斯尼乐园开放以来，几乎每一位首次来加州旅游的人都要畅游该乐园。平均每天都有5万名游客来到这里。1983年，第一座海外迪斯尼乐园在日本落成。大家都知道，目前香港的迪斯尼乐园也在建设之中。

女士们，先生们，迪斯尼制作室周期性地推出一些电影动画片，我们一直为之着迷，为之陶醉。白雪公主和她的七个小矮人，三只小猪，狮子王——辛巴，电脑动画《玩具总动员》I、II，还有消失的帝国——亚特兰蒂斯，多么迷人啊！其中，根据一个古老的中国传奇塑造的人物——花木兰，为我们展现了迪斯尼20世纪90年代新一代主角的风采。她更勇敢，更独立，不再像早期的女主角那样一心寻觅丈夫。稍后大家观看此片时一定可以充分感受到这一点。

希望大家尽兴尽致!

Passage 3

各位老师，各位同学，

女士们，先生们：

非常荣幸应邀向各位发表讲话，我的题目是“无线上网”。

因特网将向新领域进军。

无线互联网技术正在迅速发展，它包括：可连接网页、接收电子邮件和显示工作日程的手机；可收发电子邮件和上网的寻呼机；通过无线接口连接办公室和互联网的掌上电脑及其他一些装置。套用流行的

说法就叫做"随时随地都可上网"。

以大学为例来说明吧，尽管这项技术在大学校园中还属新生事物。

从去年秋季以来，美国的一些大学已经着手全校范围内的无线服务，因为他们发现实施无线上网比布线至距离校园几个街区远的寝室更便宜。现在一所小规模的学院配置好全校的无线上网设备，所需不过几十万美元，比起更新改善旧舍或布线至教室里每一张课桌无疑要经济得多。规模较大的学校费用也不过几百万美元。

携带手提电脑的学生如想联网时可花 150 美元左右购买一张无线网卡，或干脆用 450 美元一学期的价格租用一台具有无线上网功能的手提电脑。与无线网络工程相连的手提电脑赋予学生无穷的机动性。漫步校园之时，他们可以检索电子邮件，与朋友聊天，或是逗留网上。看！枫树下，一位二年级的同学铺开一张毯子，打开手提开始冲浪了，一点儿也用不着那些乱糟糟的电线。学生们几乎可随地登录——户外、教室里、篮球场看台上。而且无线网络工程还能让学生们在课堂的小组活动中更自如地合作来获取网上资源。

当然，这种技术也有缺点，例如更大的安全隐患或可能引发的线路堵塞。而且，学生们在课堂上会用手提电脑检索个人信件，甚至查看棒球比赛的得分。

尽管如此，分析家们指出到 2003 年无线网络工程将成为总值达 22 亿美元的产业，相比今年的 800 万美元，几近三倍。而且，旅馆、飞机场和某些商务机构也将普及无线网络工程。

所以，诸位还等什么呢？抛开那些线吧！

PART B

During this information age, how do you get information?

On radio and TV, or in the newspaper, you may answer.

For a long period in history, paper was the major carrier of information. However, with the rapid development of computer and network technology, it is now facing challenge from electronic publication. The advent and growth of electronic publication has exerted a profound impact on the publishing industry and even on society as a whole.

Then, what is electronic publication?

Generally speaking, it refers to the mass media that carry information in a digital form, and can be copied for various purposes.

Today, let's focus on one kind of popular electronic publication — network mode.

News bulletin, a kind of electronic publication, is actually newspapers edited on PCs, transmitted through the Internet, and read on network terminals. The users get hooked on the Internet and read what interests them, and make a copy if he or she likes. What's more, electronic publication provides such a huge flow of information at rapid speeds, much to the satisfaction of modern man. At the moment, more than 800 newspapers and magazines join the news bulletin through Internet, including world-famous *Times* and *Wall Street Journal*.

In addition, Internet has brought revolutionary changes to libraries. For example, the Congress Library in Washington has digitized 210,000 pieces of documents by now. The digital information can be transmitted to readers all over the world. In China, you key some words in the keyboard and can get into the catalog in Beijing University or Tsinghua University. Everyone can share databases on networks. One can browse data, books, magazines and catalogs by using PC connected to the network.

UNIT 13

BUSINESS AND NEGOTIATIONS

商务与谈判

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

inquiry	subject to	valid	CIF
offer	confirmation	brisk	CFR
specifications	port	drawnwork	walnut meat
quote	destination	FOB	diversification

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

谈判是商务活动中十分重要的一个环节。双方所关心的往往是产品的性能、规格、报价等等。在谈判的过程中，特别要注意数字翻译的正确性。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **We're quite interested in your items.**

   A: We're quite interested in your drawnwork items. How about the supply position?

   B: For most of the articles in the catalog, we have a good supply.

   A: Here is our inquiry list. You'll find the required items, speci-

fications and quantities all there.

B: Thanks. I'll look into it and let you have our firm offers tomorrow.

A: As you know, the market has become very competitive.

B: You'll find our prices very favorable.

A: That's fine. By the way, do you quote FOB or CIF?

B: Either can be done, though we usually quote on CIF basis.

A: Then could you please make your prices CIFC 5%?

B: Certainly. We can work them out for you.

2. **Could you make offers?**

A: Could you make offers for the items listed in your catalog?

B: Here's the price list. But the prices are subject to our final confirmation. If you inquire specifically, we can give you firm offers.

A: Item No. 9304 seems to be the one I want to try.

B: What's the quantity you're likely to take?

A: 100 tons for starters.

B: How soon do you want the goods to be delivered?

A: Early October.

B: And the port of destination?

A: Rotterdam.

B: Just a minute ... Now we can offer you firm for 100 tons of Item 9304 at US $150 per metric ton CIF Rotterdam, to be delivered in Early October.

A: How long will the offer be open?

B: It's valid for three days.

3. **How's the fur market?**

A: How's the fur market?

B: Well, it's not very brisk. But the selling season is getting near. Maybe more buyers will be in the market.

A: As far as we know, the market is quite firm. And it's bound

to advance with the coming of the season.

B: Sorry, I can hardly agree with you there. That may be the case with one or two items only. For instance, the goatskin. That's why I'm here. You have kept some for me, I think.

A: How many pieces do you want this time?

B: 10,000 pieces. It's an attractive quantity, isn't it? I hope you'll quote us your best terms.

A: We always place our old clients on the most favorable terms.

B: One thing I want to make clear: I must have the goods by the end of next month.

A: I think we can manage. I'll check the stock position and let you have our firm offer this afternoon.

4. **We want to find out if you can supply walnut meat.**

A: We want to find out if you can supply walnut meat.

B: Walnut meat is in high demand these days. We're sorry nothing is available at the moment.

A: Any chance you could scrape up a small quantity?

B: Frankly, we're all sold out.

A: Do you think you'll be getting any more in soon?

B: Not at the moment. But we'll keep your order in mind. When the next supply comes in, we'll get in touch with you.

A: Thank you. We hope to hear from you soon.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

Our products are well received by customers. The market is strong.[1] However, we are going to develop a new line.[2] There are many reasons for that. A very simple one is we can't live on old products forever.[3] Customer habits and buying patterns[4] are always changing.

We have to respond to the changing market.[5] Either we diversify or lose the market share.[6]

Of course, developing new lines can be costly, and it involves risks, but it is more important for us to keep up with the changing market.[7] At some point[8] we've got to take a few risks for the future. That's what business is all about. One can not always work on certainties.[9]

We'll make better use of our resources, men, machinery and so on. We'll also develop new ideas and raise the level of management, so as to make our company in a strong position in the world market.

Passage 2

You know, we're a new but growing firm[1] in the area, and we're willing to do our best to attract customers away from our competitors. Last week you purchased feeder paper and ledger paper[2] from us. Were you pleased with the products and the service?

We pride ourselves on prompt delivery and only the best products,[3] at the lowest cost to you. I'd like to acquaint[4] you with some of the other products we carry, some that I'm sure you use in large quantities. I'll leave this catalog with you, if it's okay. I'm sure you can save money and time on anything you buy from us.

We sell all kinds of stationery supplies[5]: typing paper, pencil sharpeners, file folders you name it[6]. Our prices are lower than any of our competitors by five to ten percent. Besides, our large warehouse stocks many items that other companies would have to order for you. We have them right there on hand for immediate delivery.[7]

Passage 3

On behalf of our group, I would like to thank you for all that you have done for us. Ever since we arrived, we have enjoyed nothing but[1] the warmest friendship and hospitality. You have opened your hearts as well as your homes to us.[2]

While our stay has been very short, we feel that it has been very rewarding[3]—not only professionally, but in making new friends and in broadening the channels of friendly contact.

I would like to conclude with the hope[4] that all of you will have a chance to come to the United States soon, not only to continue our common pursuits of professional interest, but to partake of our hospitality as well.[5,6] Finally, please allow me to propose a toast to the health and happiness of all the ladies and gentlemen present here.

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

女士们，先生们：

今晚各位能出席这个酒会[1]，我们深感荣幸。我谨代表国际贸易协会向各位致以热烈欢迎。欢迎到中国来！欢迎参加这个交易会！

交易会不只是商业活动。[2] 它不但促进贸易，而且促进友谊。有机会相互见面并交换看法，[3]这是十分重要的。

在发展对外贸易中，我们坚持“相互尊重、平等互利”的原则。[4] 我相信，这一原则有助于发展我们各国独立的民族经济。[5]

我愿借此机会向各位朋友在几年来给予我们的密切合作与热心支持表示衷心感谢。

现在请允许我提议：[6]为交易会的圆满成功，为我们的友谊与合作，为在座各位的健康，干杯！

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. We have a limited supply of electric fans.
2. The wholesale market has experienced a steady increase over the past few years.
3. We are interested in your products and would like you to send us the catalog.
4. We manufacture computerized games for young children and have a very large market share in the Far East.
5. The new product is scheduled to be launched late next month.
6. So far we don't know anything about their overseas marketing

strategy.
7. They promised to offer our customers a 15% discount on the recommended retail price.
8. It will be very tight, but I am sure that we can make the deadline.
9. Delivery must be within 20 days or I'm not interested in your products.
10. I think we have covered the main points: price, discount and delivery time.

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. The market is strong: 此句可根据具体情况译为:“市场行情看好”,或“市场行情处于强势”,或“产品很行销”。
2. develop a new line: line 在此句中的含义为“(产品或货物的)类,种”,因此可译为“开发新的产品系列”。如:
   The department store is selling a new line of winter coats. 百货商场正在出售一种新款式的冬令大衣。
3. We can't live on old products forever: live on 意为“靠……为生,(靠吃……)以维持生命”,因而应译为“永远依靠老产品吃饭”,或“永远靠老产品为生”。如:
   live on one's salary: 靠自己的薪水生活;
   She and her children live on the state. 她和孩子们依靠政府救济生活。
4. customer habits and buying patterns: 消费者的习惯和购买模式。
5. respond to the changing market: respond to sth. 在此意为“对

……作出反应"，"响应"。如：

The most serious politicians are those who respond the readiest to change. 最严肃的政治家乃是能随时对变革作出最迅速反应的人们。

the changing market 这一词组在口译时应采用增词法，译为"不断变化的市场"，或"变化多端的市场"，以使译文更加通顺。

6. Either we diversify or lose the market share：此句中的连词 either ... or ... 后接动词时，可以译为"要么……要么……"；diversify 的含义为"从事多种经营"，或"经营多样化"；market share 意为"市场份额"，即"在整个市场上所占的比例"。
7. ... to keep up with the changing market：紧跟市场的变化。在口译时，有时根据实际情况应对原句的语序和词性进行适当调整和转换。
8. at some point：这个短语在此处译为"在关键时刻"更为贴切。
9. One can not always work on certainties：可译为"人不可能总是干十拿九稳的事"，或"人不可总是做绝对有把握的事"。

Passage 2

1. a new but growing firm：虽然新开张，却在蓬勃发展的公司。but 在此处为连词，在翻译时，可将其含义"虽然……但是"或"虽然……却……"明白地译出。
2. feeder paper and ledger paper：电脑打印纸和账本用纸。
3. We pride ourselves on prompt delivery and only the best products：
   (1) pride oneself on sth. 可译为"引以自豪的是……"。
   (2) prompt delivery 意为"交货及时"或"交货迅速"。
   (3) and only the best products，这一词组在翻译时应添加"提供"二字，以使译文更加清楚、通顺。
4. acquaint sb. with sth.：让某人熟悉某物。
5. all kinds of stationery supplies：各种文具用品。应注意 stationery 和 stationary 这两个词在拼写和词义上的区别。
6. you name it：该词组意为："只要你能说得上的产品，我们都有"，或"可以说什么都有"，或"应有尽有"。name 在此为动词，意为

"陈说，列举出来"。如：

Name your price. 你说个价。

7. We have them right there on hand for immediate delivery：on hand 相当于 available，意为"在手头，现有"。for immediate delivery 这一介词短语可单独处理，译为汉语的动词结构"可以马上交货"。英语的介词结构较为灵活，在汉译时常可用动词结构处理。如：

   She goes home for lunch every day. 她每天回家吃午饭。

   Millions of people in the mountainous areas are finally off poverty. 千百万山区人民终于摆脱了贫困。

Passage 3

1. nothing but：在此句中是一较为特殊的用法，用意在于突出强调 but 之后的内容，不可采用直译方法处理为"只不过"或"仅仅"。相类似的表达形式还有，如：

   The child dreams of nothing but going to the zoo. 这孩子一心盼着要到动物园去玩。

   He did nothing but grumble. 他就会发牢骚。

2. You have opened your hearts as well as your homes to us：此句译为"而且开诚布公，推心置腹"，属于意译。也可采用直译法，译为："你们不仅向我们敞开家门，而且向我们敞开心扉。"

3. …，we feel that it has been very rewarding：可译为"我们感到收获巨大"或"我们深感获益匪浅"。rewarding 为形容词，意为"有意义的，有收获的，值得的"。如：

   Reading can be very rewarding for everyone. 阅读对人人都会有莫大的好处。

   A tour of the harbor is a very rewarding experience. 参观港口会是一次极有意义的经历。

4. I would like to conclude with the hope …：在结束我的致词以前，我要表达一个愿望……

5. not only … but … as well：相当于 not only … but also；在口译时，有时不必拘泥于形式，将原句的含义表达清楚即可。

6. partake of our hospitality：partake of 意为"分享，共享"。在此处

意为“也让你分享我们的热情好客”，故而转译为“尽我们的地主之谊”。

PART B

1. “酒会”可译为 party，或 cocktail party，或 dinner party，此处也可译为 evening party。
2. “交易会不只是商业活动。”：This Fair is more than a business event。“不只是”在此处意为“远非”，因此，用 more than；此处的“商业活动”是“大型活动”，或“重大活动”，故而用 business event 译之。
3. “交换看法”：exchange views with each other，也可译为 share views/opinions with each other。
4. “坚持‘相互尊重、平等互利’的原则”：stand for the principle of “mutual respect，equality and mutual benefit”。“坚持”也可译为 stick to，insist on，或 persist in 等，但语气均较为强烈，在此语境中并无必要，故而用 stand for 这一短语表达，意为“主张，支持”。如：

   We want to know what he stands for. 我们想知道他的主张是什么。

   He always stands for what is right. 他总是支持正确的事物。
5. “……这一原则有助于发展我们各国独立的民族经济。”：It will help develop our national economy independently.

   (1) national economy 在此处意为“民族经济”，在有些场合也可译为“国民经济”。

   (2) independently 在此句译文中作了词性转换。

   (3) 根据具体情况，our 一词所包含的意义在译文中作了扩展。
6. 提议祝酒的表达方法，常用此句型：May I propose a toast to sb. or sth.。

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **我们对你们的产品很有兴趣。**

   A：我们对你们的抽纱制品很有兴趣。供应情况怎么样？

   B：目录中大部分商品的货源都很充足。

   A：这是我们的询价单。所需要的品种、规格和数量都在上面。

   B：谢谢。我把这询价单研究一下，明天报实盘给你。

   A：你知道市场的竞争很激烈。

   B：你会发现我们的价格非常优惠。

   A：那很好。顺便问一下，你们是报离岸价还是到岸价？

   B：都行，但我们通常是报到岸价的。

   A：那请你报包括5%佣金在内的到岸价行吗？

   B：行，我们可以替你把价格算出来。

2. **你们能报价吗？**

   A：目录中所列的商品你们能报价吗？

   B：这是价格单。但是这些价格是以我方最后确认为准。如果你有具体询价，我们可以报实盘。

   A：9034号商品看来我可以试试。

   B：你想要多少数量？

   A：做100吨开个头。

   B：什么时候要货？

   A：10月初。

   B：目的港是哪里？

   A：鹿特丹。

   B：请等一等……现在我们报实盘：9304号商品100吨，每吨鹿特丹到岸价为150美元，10月初交货。

   A：报价的有效期多长？

   B：有效期为三天。

3. **皮货市场如何?**

A：皮货市场如何?

B：嗯，不太景气，不过销售旺季就要到了，也许买主会多一些。

A：据我们所知，市场很坚挺。随着旺季的到来行情必然看涨。

B：很抱歉，我很难同意你的观点，你说的也许仅仅是一两种商品的情况，例如山羊皮。这也是我来这里的目的。我想你给我留了些货。

A：这次你要多少张?

B：一万张。这数量很吸引人，是不是？希望你报最优惠的条件。

A：我们报给老客户的总是最优惠的条件。

B：有一点我要说清楚的是：下月底以前我一定要货。

A：我想能行。我查核一下存货情况，今天下午就让你拿到实盘。

4. **我们想知道你们能否供应核桃仁。**

A：我们想知道你们能否供应核桃仁。

B：这些日子核桃仁的需求量很大。很遗憾，目前无货可供。

A：有没有可能稍许凑一点数量?

B：坦率地说，货全卖完了。

A：你认为最近还会进货吗?

B：暂时不会。不过我们会把你的询价放在心上。等下一批货来时，我们就和你联系。

A：谢谢。希望能很快得到你们的信息。

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

我公司的产品深受客户的欢迎。市场行情看好。但是我们正准备开发新的产品系列。这样做的原因有很多。其中一个简单的道理是，我们不可能永远依靠老产品吃饭。消费者的习惯和购买模式总是在不断变化的。我们要对变化多端的市场采取应变措施。要么我们多样化

经营，要么就会失去市场份额。

当然，开发新的系列产品会耗资巨大，并要冒风险，但对我们来说，紧跟市场的变化更为重要。在关键时刻，为了将来，我们不得不冒一些风险。做生意就得这样。人不可能总是干十拿九稳的事嘛。

我们要更好地利用资源、人力、设备等等。我们还要更新观念，提高管理水平，以便能使本公司在国际市场上保持优势。

Passage 2

我们是本地一家虽然新开张却已在蓬勃发展的公司，我们很乐意尽力从竞争对手那里吸引客户。上星期你们从我们那里购买了电脑打印纸和账本用纸，你们对产品和服务感到满意吗?

我们引以自豪的是做到及时交货，并且只提供最好的产品，以最低的价格出售给你们。我想让你们熟悉一些我们经营的其他产品，我肯定你们在大量使用那些产品。如果行的话，我就留给您这份目录单。我肯定你们从我们这儿买东西会省钱和省时间的。

我们出售各种各样的文具用品：打字纸，卷笔刀，档案夹——可以说什么都有。我们的价格比任何竞争对手的要低五至十个百分点。除此之外，我们的大仓库里存有大量的其他公司不得不另行为你们采购的品种。我们在那里有现货，可以马上交货。

Passage 3

我代表我的同伴，感谢你们为我们所做的一切，我们来到这里以后，一直享受着你们最热情的友谊与款待，而且开诚布公，推心置腹。

虽然我们逗留短暂，但我们仍感收获巨大——不仅在专业上，而且在结交新朋友和开拓友好接触的渠道上都是如此。

在结束我的致词以前，我要表达一个愿望，希望在座诸位不久能有机会访问美国。我们将在那里尽我们的地主之谊，双方也将继续进行专业方面的探讨。最后，我提议为在座各位女士和先生的健康和幸福干杯!

PART B

Ladies and gentlemen,

It's a great pleasure to have you all here this evening. On behalf

of the International Trade Association, I'd like to extend a warm welcome to you all. Welcome to China! Welcome to the Trade Fair!

This Fair is more than a business event. It promotes friendship as well as trade. It is important to have an opportunity like this to meet and exchange views with each other.

In developing foreign trade, we stand for the principle of "mutual respect, equality and mutual benefit". I believe it will help develop our national economy independently.

I want to take this opportunity to express my thanks for the close cooperation and kind support our friends have given us over the years.

Now may I propose a toast: To the success of the Fair! To our friendship and cooperation! To the health of everyone here! Cheers!

UNIT 14

TRADE AND INVESTMENT

贸易与投资

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

potential
acquaintance
smooth
personally
associate
say hello to
foodstuff
honor the contract and keep our promise
sales network
wholesalers
chain stores
distributors
capital-intensive
technology-intensive
preferential treatment
income tax
infrastructure construction
tertiary industry

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

1. 自从我国实行改革开放政策以来，对外交往日益频繁，特别是在经济领域，我国与世界上大多数国家和地区有着经贸往来。
2. 世界贸易组织是制订国与国之间贸易规则的组织。我国已于 2001 年正式加入该组织。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **I'm here to meet you.**

   A: Excuse me, are you Mr Smith from the International Trading Co.?

   B: Yes. I'm David Smith.

   A: My name is Zhang Lin. I'm from the United Textiles Corporation. I'm here to meet you.

   B: How do you do?

   A: How do you do?

   B: It's very kind of you to have come.

   A: My pleasure. Mr Smith, I'd like you to meet Mr Li, Sales Manager of our Corporation.

   B: Very glad to meet you.

   A: Pleased to meet you, too.

2. **Did you have a nice flight?**

   A: Mr Clarke, this is our Development Manager, Mr Song.

   B: Pleased to make your acquaintance.

   A: How do you do? Did you have a nice flight, Mr Clarke?

   B: Yes. The flight was smooth, and the service was good. Things couldn't have been better.

   A: I'm glad to hear that. But you must be very tired after such a long journey.

   B: Yes, a little bit. But I'll be all right by tomorrow.

3. **Our manager Mr Li asked me to say hello to you.**

   A: Hello, Mr Rose, nice to see you again. How have you been?

   B: Fine, thank you. How are things with you?

   A: Just fine, thanks. Our manager Mr Li asked me to say hello to you. He's sorry he can't come over to meet you personally.

   B: It doesn't matter at all. I don't think you know Mr Brown,

my associate. This is Mr Zhang from the Foodstuffs Corporation.

A: Glad to meet you, Mr Brown. Welcome to China.

C: Thank you, Mr Zhang. I'm so pleased to be here.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

Our products are sold in a number of countries and regions across the world. They are very popular with the users there.[1] We are sure they will go down well in your market,[2] too.

We always stand for the principle in business to "honor the contract and keep our promise".[3] This is why our products are well-known in the world market.

There is a great variety of products for you to choose from.[4] You will surely find something you are interested in. You can palce a trial order[5] to sound out the market potential[6] if you find anything that interests you.

We welcome business contacts. Maybe this meeting is the start of a long and friendly connection between our two firms.

Passage 2

The World Trade Organization (WTO) is the only international organization dealing with the global rules of trade between nations[1]. Its main function is to ensure that trade flows as smoothly, predictably and freely as possible.

The result is assurance.[2] Consumers and producers know that they can enjoy secure supplies[3] and greater choice of the finished products[4], components, raw materials and services that they use. Producers and exporters know that foreign markets will remain open to them.

The result is also a more prosperous, peaceful and accountable economic world.[5] Decisions in the WTO are typically taken by consensus[6] among all member countries and they are ratified by members' parliaments.[7] Trade friction[8] is channeled into[9] the WTO's dispute settlement process[10] where the focus is on interpreting agreements and commitments,[11] and how to ensure that countries' trade policies conform with them. That way, the risk of disputes spilling over into political or military conflict is reduced.[12] By lowering trade barriers, the WTO's system also breaks down other barriers[13] between peoples and nations.

Passage 3

Ladies and gentlemen,

I'd like to mention here to you some preferential policies granted by our local government[1] for encouraging foreign investment in the New Economic Development Zone.[2]

First, those overseas investors who could introduce capital-intensive or technology-intensive projects[3] would receive preferential treatment, such as reduction of income tax,[4] or even tax exemption[5] for a certain period of time.

Second, foreign investors are now allowed to invest in specialized hospital and school projects.

And thirdly, foreign businessmen can now invest in real estate for domestic sale.[6] Foreign investors are especially encouraged to put their capital in the tertiary industry[7] and infrastructure construction[8] projects.

We are expanding the scope of utilizing foreign funds[9] to speed up[10] our development and construction and to attain international standards.[11] I've got a handbook here, which gives all the details. You may take a look at it if you are interested in it. May success be with you.[12]

Thank you.

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

戈登先生，感谢您亲切的讲话。

我方也非常高兴能和你们在英国度过这样一段愉快而富有成果的时光[1]。我代表中国代表团，向您和您的夫人以及戴维斯小姐表示最诚挚的谢意。谢谢你们为我们所安排的一切，使我们的访问取得了这样的成就。我们的收获的确超出了我们的预料。我愿意告诉大家，对诸位为此所作的努力，我们是十分感谢的。[2]

我们对英国的访问，在各方面[3] 都是非常愉快的。在告别英格兰的时候，我觉得自己对于它和它的历史有了更多的了解。我想，我可以代表我的同事们说，我们到处所受到的热情的、发自内心的殷勤款待，[4]将使我们久久不能忘怀。

我们希望在不久的将来，能在中国接待诸位，也请诸位看看中国的一些历史名胜。[5]

现在，我提议为东道主们的健康干杯![6] 希望不久能够再见面。

女士们，先生们，请大家起立，为主人干杯!

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. Having put about US $35 million into Shenzhen, the US-based DuPont is going through related formalities for additional investment.
2. The 30-day talks and negotiations resulted in the conclusion of agreements on 365 projects, with total investment hitting US $2.12 billion.
3. The Chinese Government plans to use overseas investment to speed up the development of its environmental protection industry.
4. The company's sales revenue last year reached 750 million *yuan*, with US $40 million coming from the export of new products.
5. Coca-cola has so far invested US $1.2 billion in China since it was first introduced to the country in 1979.
6. The United Nations Conference on Trade and Development reports

that global foreign direct investment soared by 39% last year.

7. As China gradually opens more of its service markets, foreign investors will have a chance to increase their presence in China.
8. Many US companies, such as General Motors, General Electric and Motorola, have expanded their capital inputs in China, which promises a high investment return.
9. China is one of the five regional markets for Unilever, together with Central and Eastern Europe, India, Southern Latin America and Southeast Asia.
10. More enterprises will be encouraged to conduct overseas cooperation on a larger scale.

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. They are very popular with the users there.

   (1) 此句的代词 They 系指上句中的 our products，翻译时可采用并句译法，省去这一代词，以避免重复，也更符合汉语表述习惯。

   (2) popular 在此意为"深得人心，广受欢迎，讨人喜欢"，相当于 well-liked。如：

   That teacher is very popular with her pupils. 那位教师很受学生爱戴。

   He is a good politician, but he isn't popular. 他很会搞政治，但是不得人心。

   That singer is very popular with teenagers. 那位歌手很受青少年欢迎。

2. ... go down well in your market：在你们的市场上走俏。go down

在此句中意为“被接受，受欢迎”，相当于 be received，常与 with 或 well 连用。如：

Will the plan go down with the farmers? 这项计划能为农民所接受吗？

His speech went down well. 他的演讲受到人们的赞赏。

3. ... honor the contract and keep our promise. 重合同，守信用。
4. There is a great variety of products for you to choose from. 我们可供您选择的花色品种有很多。

   (1) a variety of 在此句中意指“花色品种”。

   (2) 此句结尾处的介词 from 不可省去，否则句子不完整。
5. place a trial order：不妨先订购一笔试试。此句的基本句型为：to place an order with sb. for sth.，意为“向某人订购某物”。
6. ... to sound out the market potential：探测一下市场的潜力。sound out 意为“试探，探询”。如：

   to sound out public opinion：试探公众舆论；

   The mayor sounded out the experts' views on the question of environmental pollution. 市长征询专家们对环境污染问题的看法。

Passage 2

1. the global rules of trade between nations：国与国之间的贸易规则。
2. The result is assurance：此句根据具体语境在口译时应采用添加词译法，将原文所包含的意义明确地翻译成汉语，否则会使听者感到唐突，且词不达意。可译为：建立世界贸易组织的主要目的就是使国际贸易得到保障。
3. secure supplies：secure 在此处为形容词，意为“牢靠的，稳固的，无忧虑的”，因此，可译为“供应充足”。如：

   The old couple lived a quiet and secure life. 老夫妇俩过着平静安定的生活。

   Land in this city is a secure investment. 在这座城市，地产是稳当的投资。
4. finished products：成品，也可译为“产品”。semi-finished products 或 half-finished products 则为“半成品”。

5. The result is also a more prosperous, peaceful and accountable economic world. 世界贸易组织的建立还使世界经济更加繁荣、和平，而且权责明确。
   (1) 此译法可参见注 2。
   (2) accountable 在此句中的意思为“负有责任的，应负责任的”，因而可译为“权责明确的”。如：
      They should be held accountable for their acts. 他们应对自己的行为负责。
      He should be partially accountable for the loss. 他应对这一损失负部分责任。
      People's deputies should be accountable to people who elect them. 人民代表应该对选举他们的人民负责。
6. Decisions ... are typically taken by consensus：决定应取得……一致同意。
7. ... are ratified by members' parliaments：由成员国议会批准通过。members 在此处应译为“成员国”。
8. trade friction：贸易磨擦。
9. be channeled into：纳入……渠道。
10. the WTO's dispute settlement process：世界贸易组织贸易争端解决程序。
11. commitments：此处意为“各国在开展贸易活动时所做出的各项承诺”，因而译为“义务”。
12. the risk of disputes spilling over into political or military conflict is reduced. ……就能减少由贸易摩擦而导致政治和军事冲突的危险。
   (1) 此句为被动语态，如同样译为汉语的被动语态，则难以处理，且汉语语句会不够通顺，因而译为汉语的主动语态，这一译法在口笔译实践中均用得较普遍。
   (2) spilling over 为现在分词短语，作定语，修饰 disputes，意为“漫延，波及，影响到”。
13. break down the barriers：减少/消除障碍。

Passage 3

1. some preferential policies granted by our local government：本

地(当地)政府所给予的一些优惠政策。

(1) granted 在此处意为"被准予(allowed)",或"被给予(given)",为一过去分词,后置修饰 preferential policies。翻译时也可变被动语态为主动语态,用 encouraging 构成汉语的动宾结构。

(2) preferential policy 有时也可用 favorable policy 或 preferential measure 替代。下文中的 preferential treatment 意为"优惠待遇"。

2. the New Economic Development Zone:新经济开发区。
3. capital-intensive or technology-intensive projects:资金密集型或技术密集型项目。labor-intensive 则意为"劳动密集型"。
4. income tax:所得税。而 individual income tax 可译为"个人收入调节税"。
5. tax exemption:免交所得税。exemption 意为"免税(尤指部分所得税)",其动词和形容词形式均为 exempt。如:
   She was exempted from paying tax. 她被准许免交税金。
   These houses are exempt from paying rates. 这些房屋是免税的。
6. real estate for domestic sale:内销房地产。
7. tertiary industry:第三产业(主要指宾馆、餐饮、服务类产业)。primary industry 为"第一产业"(主要指农业、采矿等产业);secondary industry 则为"第二产业"(主要指制造、加工类产业)。
8. infrastructure construction:基础设施建设。应注意:此处的 construction 不能用 building 替代。
9. We are expanding the scope of utilizing foreign funds ... 我们正在扩大利用外资的范围。
   scope 在此处作"范围(range)"解。如:
   The proceedings of the conference cover a wide scope. 会议议项所及范围很广。
   Such questions are not within the scope of this book. 这种问题不在本书讨论范围之内。
10. speed up:加快速度,相当于 increase 或 accelerate。如:
   speed up mechanization of farm work:加速农业机械化。
   其反义词组为 slow down。
11. attain international standards:意为"达到国际水平",转译为"与

国际接轨”。

12. May success be with you：译为“预祝各位马到成功”，则更符合此处语境和汉语表达习惯。

PART B

1. “……度过这样一段愉快而富有成果的时光。”可译为：to have spent such a pleasant and fruitful time，此处为访问活动已结束时的发言，因此应使用动词的完成体形式来表达这一层意思。“富有成果”也可用 rewarding 来表示。
2. “……对诸位为此所作的努力，我们是十分感谢的”可译为：... we are most appreciative of your efforts in making this possible，也可译为：... we are most grateful to you for your efforts that made this possible。to be appreciative of 意为“对……表示感谢”。
3. “各方面”可译为：in all respects，也可译为：in every respect。
4. “发自内心的殷勤的款待”可译为：spontaneous hospitality，也可译为：hospitality from the depth/bottom of your heart。
5. “请诸位看看中国的一些历史名胜。”可译为：show you some of the historical sights in China。“历史名胜”也可译为：places of historical interest。但应注意 historical 与 historic 之间的区别。
6. “我提议为东道主们的健康干杯”：I'd like to propose a toast to our hosts，to your very good health，此处的 a toast to sb. 意为“向某人敬酒”之意，toast 后接介词 to。

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **我是到这儿来接你的。**

   A：请问，你是国际贸易公司的史密斯先生吗？

   B：是的。我是大卫·史密斯。

   A：我叫张林，是联合纺织品公司的。我是到这儿来接你的。

B：你好！

A：你好！

B：谢谢你来接我。

A：我很乐意。史密斯先生，我来给你介绍一下，这是我们公司的销售经理李先生。

B：认识你很高兴。

A：我也很高兴。

2. **旅途很愉快吧？**

A：克拉克先生，这是我们开发部经理宋先生。

B：很高兴能认识你。

A：你好！旅途很愉快吧，克拉克先生？

B：是的。一路很顺利，服务很周到。一切再好不过了。

A：听你这么说，我很高兴。可是，经过这么久的长途旅行，你一定很疲倦了。

B：是的，有一点。不过到明天就恢复过来了。

3. **我们经理李先生让我转达对你的问候。**

A：你好，罗斯先生。很高兴再次见到你。你一向可好？

B：很好，谢谢。你怎么样？

A：也很好，谢谢。我们经理李先生让我转达对你的问候。他很抱歉不能亲自来接你。

B：一点儿没关系。我想你没见过我的同事布朗先生吧。这位是食品公司的张先生。

A：很高兴能认识你，布朗先生。欢迎你到中国来。

C：谢谢，张先生。我很高兴能来这儿。

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

我公司产品行销海外许多国家和地区，很受那里用户的欢迎。我

们相信，我们的产品也会在你们的市场上走俏。

我们一直坚持“重合同、守信用”这一经营业务的原则。这正是我们的产品之所以在国际市场上很有名的原因。

我们可供您选择的花色品种有很多，肯定会有一些使您感兴趣的商品。如果您发现了您感兴趣的商品，也可以不妨先订购一笔试试，探测一下市场的潜力。

我们欢迎建立业务关系。也许这次会晤就是我们两家公司之间长期友好往来的一个开端。

Passage 2

世界贸易组织是惟一制定国家之间贸易规则的国际性组织。它的主要功能就是保证国际贸易能够平稳、顺利地进行。

建立世界贸易组织的主要目的就是使国际贸易得到保障。生产者和消费者们知道他们所需要的产品、零件、原材料和服务供应充足，而且他们所选择的范围更加广泛。生产商和出口商们也知道国外的市场始终对他们开放。

世界贸易组织的建立还使世界经济更加繁荣、和平，而且权责明确。世界贸易组织的决定通常由所有成员国一致同意，并由成员国议会批准通过。贸易摩擦由世界贸易组织来调停解决，主要是对成员国之间所签订的协议和双方的义务进行解释说明，并且确保各国遵守这些贸易政策。这样，就能减少由贸易摩擦而导致政治和军事冲突的危险。在降低各国贸易壁垒的过程中，世贸组织也减少了阻碍各国人民和各个国家之间交流的其他障碍。

Passage 3

女士们，先生们：

我想借此机会向各位介绍一下本地政府鼓励外商在新经济开发区投资的一些优惠政策。

首先，海外投资者如能引进资金密集型或技术密集型项目，就可以享有诸如减少所得税，甚至在一定时期内免交所得税的优惠待遇。

其次，外国投资者现在已被允许投资于专业医院项目和学校项目。

第三，外国商人也可以投资于内销房地产项目。我们尤其鼓励外

国投资者投资于第三产业和基础设施建设项目。

我们正在扩大利用外资的范围，目的是要加快建设和发展的速度，尽快与国际接轨。我这里有一本手册，其中有详细说明。各位如果有兴趣，不妨来看一看，预祝各位马到成功。

谢谢！

PART B

Thank you, Mr Gordon, for you kind words.

We certainly, on our side, are also delighted to have spent such a pleasant and fruitful time with you in England. I'd like to extend the delegation's sincerest thanks to you and your wife, and to Miss Davis for everything that you have arranged for us for making our stay such a success. We have certainly achieved more than we hoped, and I'd like you all to know that we are most appreciative of your efforts in making this possible.

Our stay in the U.K. has been a most happy one in all respects, and I'm leaving England feeling that I've learnt a lot more about it and its history. I'm sure I can speak for all my colleagues that all the warm and spontaneous hospitality that we've received from everyone here will stay with us for a very long time to come.

We look forward to meeting you all in China in the near future, and to showing you some of our historical sights.

So now I'd like to propose a toast to our hosts, to your very good health. And I hope we will meet again very soon.

Ladies and gentlemen, please be upstanding. And I give cheers to our hosts.

UNIT 15

ECONOMY AND DEVELOPMENT

经济与发展

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

currency	accession	remain committed to
euro	sector	diverse
abstract form	survey	interdependent
transaction	prosperity	reaffirm
automatic teller machine	pin down to	voluntarism
dispense	inception	underpin
simultaneously	compelling	

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

1. euro：欧元(欧盟国家通用货币单位)是一种超国家货币。2002 年 1 月 1 日，欧元纸币和硬币开始在欧元区 12 国同时使用。
2. 欧洲联盟，简称“欧盟”。1992 年 2 月 7 日欧共体 12 国政府在荷兰马斯特里赫特签订了《欧洲联盟条约》，决定在 20 世纪末建成包括货币联盟、拥有共同的安全和外交政策的联盟。从此，欧共体改称为欧洲联盟。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **This catalog is a real eye-catcher.**

   Ann: Bill, is that the new catalog?

   Bill: Oh, yes, it is. I had it designed by a first-rate joint venture advertising agency in Shanghai.

   Ann: It's fantastic. It'll certainly make everybody take notice of our products and order them.

   Bill: Yes, I think they've done a good job. I'm going to get several thousand extra copies printed.

   Ann: Are you going to mail most of them to our regular customers?

   Bill: No doubt we'll need a lot of them for the mailing, and we can also use them at the Trade Fair that is coming up this fall.

   Ann: This catalog is a real eye-catcher.

2. **Career women**

   Marcia: What sort of jobs are open to women in your country?

   Lin: Practically all jobs are open to women nowadays, thanks to the adoption of the reform and opening-up policy. Today they can go in for any career but some jobs are of special interest to them.

   Marcia: Such as?

   Lin: Well, a job as a nurse or as a secretary for instance.

   Marcia: Do women get paid the same as men?

   Lin: Yes, I think so.

3. **Challenges and opportunities**

   Wang: Mr Brown, were you pleased with the products and the service last week?

   Mr Brown: Yes, we were.

   Wang: I'm very glad to hear that. You know, we're a new

	but growing firm in the area. We must face the challenge from the outside now that China has entered the WTO. We are willing to do our best to attract customers away from our competitors.
Mr Brown:	Naturally, we're always interested in saving money.
Wang:	That's no problem. Our prices are lower than any of our competitors' by 5% – 10%.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

For travelers to Europe, from January 2002 there's something special on offer besides all the usual sights.[1] It's the chance to be in on the end of an era, and the birth of a new currency.[2] Yes, it's goodbye to the franc, the mark and many of the other currencies which now confront visitors to Europe. They have all been replaced by the new euro.

The changeover promises a much simpler life for visitors to Europe. On December 31, 2001 a dozen members of the European Union switched to the euro — a change which affects 300 million people. The euro currency has existed in abstract form since 1999. The next step was to make the move from abstract to physical. That is to abandon the old currencies and use the new euro notes and coins instead.

Since the beginning of the 2002 New Year, people in Europe have the choice of paying with the old notes and coins or with euros. But traders are meant to give change only in euros.[3] Many of Europe's 200,000 or so automatic teller machines are also meant to begin dispensing nothing but euros.[4]

Passage 2

There's widespread bullishness on prospects in China following its accession to the World Trade Organization.[1] Virtually every sector of industry checked in this survey showed that people felt they would benefit. 70% – 80% of people in import-export, insurance, business services and manufacturing believe that WTO membership would increase prosperity in their sector.

But the results were more varied when we pinned them down to predict exactly what the effects would be.[2] In general, the change of rules would make China more accessible, and thus cause foreign investment to flow inwards.

A large number of people reckoned that the change of trade rules would have an effect on domestic industry.[3] This would suddenly lead to consumers having a far greater choice of products and services, and at much more competitive prices. Such changes, of course, would be bad news for inefficient companies producing substandard products.

Passage 3

APEC has come a long way since its inception in 1989. So has the world around it.[1] These changes have not in any way lessened the need for a vehicle of cooperation like APEC in our region. On the contrary, they have made it more compelling for us to remain fully committed to the APEC process.[2]

We also reaffirm our belief in the unique APEC approach. It is based on the fundamental principles of voluntarism, combination of individual and collective actions. We also concentrate on flexibility, comprehensiveness and open regionalism. All these have inspired and underpinned our successes.

At the same time, we recognize that APEC must demonstrate its dynamism in advancing with the times. We should demonstrate it by responding and adapting to changes in the global and regional economy. As it enters the second decade, it is important for APEC

to enrich and update its vision for the future.

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

加入世界贸易组织之后，中国的普通消费者将会发现可供选择的商品增多，其中不乏来自国外的许多新品牌。[1] 届时，消费者们是否选购这些商品呢?[2] 答案还很难说。但是，通过这次调查，我们发现比较富有的中国消费者将会更倾向于支持国产品牌。59%的采访对象表示，在同类产品中，他们会选择国货。[3]

当然，这并不意味着进口商品将会一直滞留在货架上，卖不出去。恰恰相反，中国消费者已经开始培养起一种喜爱尝试新事物的消费心理。尽管三分之二的采访对象表示自己更习惯于选购自己熟悉的品牌，仍然有四分之三的人承认自己会被有特色的新产品吸引。

总体来说，中国的精英分子相信加入世贸组织将会使中国的经济更好地融入世界经济的大框架之中。[4] 商业机会将持续增多，投资数额将继续上扬，整个经济状况会越来越好。

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. This catalog is a real eye-catcher.
2. We must face the challenge from the outside now that China has entered the WTO.
3. Our prices are lower than any of our competitors' by 5% - 10%.
4. On December 31, 2001 a dozen members of the European Union switched to the euro — a change which affects 300 million people.
5. But traders are meant to give change only in euros.
6. There's widespread bullishness on prospects in China following its accession to the World Trade Organization.
7. But the results were more varied when we pinned them down to predict exactly what the effects would be.
8. APEC has come a long way since its inception in 1989. So has the world around it.

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. ... there's something special on offer besides all the usual sights. 除了能够欣赏到往日的美丽风光外，还会碰到一些特别的事情。
   something special on offer 即 something special that are offered (to someone)，指"（向游客)所提供的特别的东西。"
2. It's the chance to be in on the end of an era, and the birth of a new currency. 那就是见证一个时代的结束、一种新货币诞生的机会。
   a chance/opportunity to do sth. 意为有机会去做某事；
   the end of ... 意为……的终结；
   the birth of ... 意为……的诞生。如：
   The old Prime Minister witnessed the end of the old empire and the birth of a new one. 老首相亲眼目睹了旧王朝的覆灭和新帝国的诞生。
   to be in on 意为 to experience, to see，即"经历，见证，参与"。如：
   I was honored to be in on the launch of China's first manned spacecraft. 我很荣幸地参加了中国首次载人航天飞机的发射。
3. But traders are meant to give change only in euros. 但零售商必须用欧元找零。
   这里的 change 是"找头，找零"的意思。change in a certain currency 是指"用某种货币的形式找零"。
   be meant to 意为 be supposed to，即"应该，得"。如：
   Little children are not meant to speak with strangers. 小孩子不应该和陌生人说话。

4. Many of Europe's 200,000 or so automatic teller machines are also meant to begin dispensing nothing but euros. 欧洲的约20万台自动取款机中的大多数也将开始只发放欧元。
automatic teller machines (ATM): 自动取款机。
nothing but 意为 only, 即"只有, 仅仅"。在句中就是"只能吐出欧元, 而不是其他货币"的意思。

Passage 2

1. There's widespread bullishness on prospects in China following its accession to the World Trade Organization. 人们对中国入世后的发展前景普遍持乐观态度。
   (1) prospect 意为"前景, 前途, 可能"。如:
   Prospects of employment remained gloomy for most city dwellers in the first quarter of the year. 这年第一季度对大多数城市居民来说就业前景十分暗淡。
   (2) accession to 意为"(对条约等的)正式接受(或加入)"。accession 的动词形式为 accede。如:
   It is doubtful whether the country will accede to the new treaty. 该国是否会接受这个新条约。
2. But the results were more varied when we pinned them down to predict exactly what the effects would be. 但当问及带来的具体影响的时候, 回答却是各种各样的。
   (1) varied 意为"不同的, 多种多样的。"
   (2) pin someone down 意为 force someone to make a decision or provide details, 即"使交待"。如:
   As a journalist, you'll have to be persistent to pin down the interviewees. 作为一名记者, 想要采访对象有所交待, 你得坚持不懈。
3. A large number of people reckoned that the change of trade rules would have an effect on domestic industry. 很多人认为贸易规则的变化会改变民族工业的状况。
   (1) reckon 意为"认为, 觉得, 想, 判断"。如:
   Beckham is reckoned to be one of the greatest footballers in

the contemporary world. 贝克汉姆被认为是当今世界最伟大的足球运动员之一。

(2) have an effect on 意为"对……有影响，有效力"。如：

The tablets for stomachache had a quick effect on me. 治胃痛的药很快就在我身上起了作用。

Passage 3

1. APEC has come a long way since its inception in 1989. So has the world around it. 自 1989 年成立以来，APEC 经历了许多变化。整个周边环境也起了很大变化。

(1) come a long way 意为"经历了很多，进步了不少"。如：

The small firm has come a long way since its early days. 这家小公司比先前有了很大进步。

(2) inception 意为"成立"。如：

The organization is winning more and more support from university undergraduates since its inception. 自成立以来，这个组织赢得了越来越多的大学生的支持。

(3) So has the world around it. 意即 The world around it has also come a long way.

2. On the contrary, they have made it more compelling for us to remain fully committed to the APEC process. 相反，这使我们更有必要全力支持 APEC 的进程。

(1) on the contrary 意为"正相反"。如：

"Didn't you enjoy the film?" "On the contrary, I fell asleep half way through." "你一定很喜欢这部电影吧?" "正相反，我看到一半就睡着了。"

(2) commit to 意为"承诺，保证，约定"。如：

If you want to accomplish something, you'll have to commit yourself to it. 你得全身心投入才能有所成就。

The government said that once it committed to the treaty there was no going back. 政府表明一旦它承诺履行条约就不会反悔。

PART B

1. "……中国的普通消费者将会发现可供选择的商品增多，其中不乏来自国外的许多新品牌。"：average Chinese consumers will start to find more choices in their shops, including many new items form overseas.

   也可译成：average consumers in China will begin to find more products on offer, among which are various imported new items.

2. "届时，消费者们是否会选购这些商品呢?"：But, will they buy them?

   也可译成：When the time comes, will the consumers choose/purchase them(the products from overseas)?

3. "59%的采访对象表示，在同类产品中，他们会选择国货。"：59% of respondents said that they would prefer to buy Chinese brands rather than foreign brands when they are choosing form the same category.

   "59%的采访对象"也可译成 59% of the people who were interviewed，或 59% of the interviewees，或 59% of the subjects in the survey。

   "国货，国内品牌"也可译成 domestic items/brands，或 home-made products。

4. "总体来说，中国的精英分子相信加入世贸组织将会使中国的经济更好地融入世界经济的大框架之中。"：On the whole, a common feeling among Chinese elites is that their country's accession to the WTO will boost Chinese economic prosperity in the main frame of world economy.

   也可译成：In general, Chinese elites believe that China's entry into WTO will enable Chinese economy to fit into the main frame of world economy.

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **确实是一份引人注目的目录单。**

安：　比尔，那是新的商品目录吗？

比尔：哦，是的。我让上海的一家一流的中外合资广告公司设计的。

安：　太棒了。那一定会使每个人注意到我们的产品，并且下订单的。

比尔：是的。我认为他们设计的不错。我准备再印几千份。

安：　你是不是打算把它们寄给我们的固定客户？

比尔：毫无疑问我们需要大量的目录单以便邮寄。而且我们还可以在今年秋季的交易会上派上用场。

安：　这确实是一份引人注目的目录单。

2. **职业妇女**

玛夏：在你们国家里，什么样的工作可以让妇女来做？

林：　由于改革开放政策的施行，如今妇女几乎可以做所有的工作。她们可以选择任何职业，不过某些工作令她们特别感兴趣。

玛夏：比方说？

林：　嗯，比如说当护士，或者做秘书。

玛夏：妇女得到的报酬是否跟男子一样？

林：　是的，我想是的。

3. **挑战和机遇**

王：　　　布朗先生，上周您对我们的产品和服务感到满意吗？

布朗先生：是的。满意。

王：　　　很高兴您这样说。你知道，我们是本地一家新开张却已蓬勃发展的公司。现在中国已经加入了世界贸易组织，我们必须面对来自国外的挑战。我们很乐意从我

们的竞争对手那里将客户吸引过来。

布朗先生：自然我们一向对省钱感兴趣。

王：　　那没问题。我们的价格比任何竞争对手的要低 5% - 10%。

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

从 2002 年 1 月起到欧洲旅游观光的游客，除了能够欣赏到往日的美丽风光外，还会碰到一些特别的事情。那就是见证一个时代结束、一种新货币诞生的机会。是的，要向游客去欧洲旅游要打交道的法朗、马克和其他货币说再见了。它们被一种新货币——欧元取代了。

游客的欧洲之旅将会随着这种更换而变得更为简单。2001 年 12 月 31 日，12 个欧盟成员国决定启用欧元——这个决定将影响 3 亿人的生活。从 1999 年起欧元就以虚拟的形式存在了。下一步就是把虚拟转变为有形，也就是废除旧货币，启用新的欧元纸币和硬币。

从 2002 年元旦开始，欧洲人可以选择用旧纸币和硬币或欧元付款。但零售商必须用欧元找零。欧洲的约 20 万台自动取款机中的大多数也将开始只发放欧元。

Passage 2

人们对中国入世后的发展前景普遍持乐观态度。在我们这次调查中，几乎每种行业的人都认为自己会从中受益。在从事进出口、保险、服务业及制造业的人中有 70 - 80%相信入世会使其行业更加繁荣。

但当问及带来的具体影响的时候，回答却是各种各样的。总的来说，大家认为规则的改变会使中国变得更容易接近，使得外商投资涌向中国。

很多人认为贸易规则的变化会改变民族工业的状况。由此，从产品到服务，消费者将突然面临更多更好的选择，而且价格也更为实惠。当然，这些变化对那些效率低下、产品不合格的企业来说就是一个噩耗。

Passage 3

从 1989 年成立以来，APEC 经历了许多变化。整个周边环境也起了很大变化。但是这些变化从未削弱 APEC 作为我们这一区域的合作载体的重要性。相反，这使得我们更有必要全力支持 APEC 的进程。

同时，我们重申对 APEC 独特方式的信奉。这种独特方式是基于自主自愿、协商一致的基本原则上的。我们还强调灵活性、全面性和开放的地区主义。所有这些都促进并帮助我们取得了成功。

与此同时，我们意识到 APEC 必须表现出活力，与时俱进。我们必须回应并适应全球及地区经济的变化来显示我们的活力。在 APEC 进入第二个 10 年之际，它应该被赋予新的内涵和生机勃勃的未来。

PART B

After China joins the World Trade Organization, average Chinese consumers will start to find more choices in their shops, including many new items from overseas. But, will they buy them? It isn't something that can be taken for granted. However, the survey suggests that richer Chinese are more inclined to take homemade products. 59% of respondents said that they would prefer to buy Chinese brands rather than foreign brands when they are choosing from the same category.

Of course, this doesn't mean that imported items will all be left on the shelf. On the contrary, Chinese consumers have cultivated a liking for trying out new products. While two thirds of them claim to prefer sticking with brands they are already familiar with, three quarters of respondents admit to being drawn to try new and distinctive items.

On the whole, a common feeling among Chinese elites is that their country's accession to the WTO will boost Chinese economic prosperity in the main frame of world economy. Business opportunities will steadily increase, capital investments will rise constantly, and the overall economy will be improving.

UNIT 16

FOREIGN RELATIONS

对外关系

TEXT

I. VOCABULARY PREVIEW

bilateral	equality	diversity
noteworthy	mutual benefit	treaty
territorial integrity	exchange	cross-century
sovereignty	ecology	deep-going

II. BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE

1. President Richard Nixon：尼克松(1913－)，美国第37任总统(1969－1974)，共和党人，因水门事件被迫辞职。总统任内访问中国(1972.2)，与周恩来总理在上海发表联合公报，开辟了中美关系正常化的道路。
2. Boao：博鳌，中国海南省城市。2002年4月12日在此举办亚洲论坛首次年会。

III. WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **Sino-American relations**

Jane： As we all know, though the relationship between China and the USA has been greatly improved, quite a num-

ber of differences still exist and new problems have emerged. What do you think about the outlook for bilateral relations?

Zhang: Well, I think the problem of Taiwan has always been a most important, most sensitive and most noteworthy question in the Sino-American relations. If both sides can keep strictly to such important principles as mutual respect for territorial integrity and sovereignty, equality and mutual benefit, then the Sino-American relations may develop steadily.

2. **Sino-Japanese relations**

Jack: What do you think China should do to develop the long-term Sino-Japanese relations?

Wang: You know, after the Chinese and Japanese Prime Ministers exchanged visits, President Jiang visited Japan in 1999. This was the first time for a Chinese president to visit Japan. I believe China and Japan, as two major countries and neighbours, had long cultural and friendly exchanges in the past and shared cultural origins. But in modern times we also had an unfortunate history. So, to develop the Sino-Japanese friendship, we must take history as guidance.

3. **China-EU relations**

Robert: In Europe, there are nearly one million overseas Chinese who are very interested in China's relationship with the European Union. What's your opinion about it?

Li: Well, China and the EU and other European countries are important trading partners for mutual benefit. What's more important, in international affairs, China and the EU and many other European nations share

the same ideas and positions. Our relationship with the EU has been developing well, so has our relationship with other European countries. I believe the outlook is bright.

IV. PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A: ENGLISH-CHINESE INTERPRETATION

Passage 1

Dear children,

It's my pleasure to talk with you here. Maybe you've known something about China from movies, books or your parents, your neighbours and your friends, that's not enough. I'm speaking here to encourage all of you to study as much as you can about China.

The reason is that we live in an increasingly internationalized world. The tragic attacks of September 11 show that the oceans no longer protect us from our enemies. We need all the friends abroad we can get. To that end we should study how to get along with China, the most populous country in the world.[1] Based on my recent trip to China, it may also become the most powerful country in the world during your lifetime.[2] There are nearly 1.3 billion people in China. That makes China's population about five times ours. Another reason for getting along with China, whether you like to get along or not!

There are many ways to learn about a foreign country. At a minimum, I urge you to pay special attention to the history of China, its geography, political and economic system, ecology, culture, architecture, religious groups and beliefs.

One way to learn about a country is to collect its stamps. They tell you a lot about what is going on in the country. I also encourage you to try to get to know Chinese people in the United States, and to travel to China if you get the chance, to see for yourselves what is

going on there.

What is going on there can be described in one word. Awesome! China has a booming free market economy.[3] Though its society is not perfect, we must admit that no society is perfect. I was very impressed by the energy of the Chinese people, their work ethic, their pride in their country and culture, their practicality, and the rapid development of the Chinese economy.[4]

Besides study, stamps, acquaintanceship and travel, there lies still another way to learn about China.[5] That is by studying the Chinese language. It is difficult, but it is fascinating.

The other day I asked my granddaughter Jenny what kind of college she was interested in, she had a one-word reply: "Diversity." I agree with her 100%. I think that tolerance of diversity will be the key to the survival of the United States in the 21st century.[6]

What I've said here is an effort to peer ahead into a world after September 11. Please do not consider this lecture as a demand. I want to tell you my thoughts, the product of a three-week trip to China, a place I never imagined I would have the opportunity to see.

Thank you!

Passage 2

Respected President,

Dear faculty and students,

I'm so grateful for the hospitality and honored for the reception at your great university.[1] Thank you for welcoming me as well as my entire party.

My visit comes on an important anniversary. Thirty years ago this week an American president arrived in China on a trip to end decades of estrangement and centuries of suspicion.[2] President Richard Nixon showed the world that two vastly different governments could meet on the grounds of common interest in the spirit of mutual respect.[3] His handshake with China came over the vastest ocean in the world.

It was in 1975 that I visited China last time. Since then, a lot has changed in your country. China has made amazing progress in openness and enterprise and economic freedom. And this progress demonstrates us China's great potential.

America and China have exchanged many handshakes of friendship and commerce during the 30 years. Now we have had more contact with each other and the citizens of both countries have gradually learned more about each other.

All these changes will lead to a stronger, more confident China, a China that can astonish and enrich the world, a China that your generation will help create.[4]

Six years from now, athletes from America and around the world will come to your country for the Olympic Games. I'm confident they will find a China that is becoming a *daguo*, a leading nation, at peace with its people and at peace with the world.

Thank you very much!

Passage 3

Just now, the reporter mentioned that there still remains some feeling of resentment between Japan and China over the problem of history[1]. So I wish to discuss with you my thoughts on it.

1999 saw the 20th anniversary of the signing of the Sino-Japanese Treaty for Peace and Friendship. President Jiang was invited to pay a state visit to Japan. The visit was a big success. Through the meetings and talks in Tokyo, the leaders of the two countries exchanged their views in a frank and deep-going way on the question of history, on how to treat historical questions correctly. They also reached agreement on the direction of developing cross-century Chinese-Japanese relations. The two sides agreed that the future China-Japan relationship should be a friendly and cooperative partnership for peace and development. On the historical question, the two sides agreed to one principle, that is, taking history as guidance while looking into the future. Only by correctly un-

derstanding and handling the historical problems can we open up a new future for the Sino-Japanese relations.[2] This is a very important common ground reached by two sides.

In my view, in order to promote continued growth of the Sino-Japanese relations, the most important task for our two countries is to take follow-up actions.[3] That means the two sides must fully carry out the various agreements set during the period of President Jiang's trip to Japan, such as the cross-century exchange program between the Chinese and Japanese youngsters and the bilateral cooperation in high-tech industries.[4] All these efforts will lead to the continuous, sound and steady development of the Sino-Japanese friendship and cooperation.

PART B: CHINESE-ENGLISH INTERPRETATION

各位嘉宾,[1]

女士们，先生们：

我很高兴参加这次“中国日”年会。[2] 我代表中国政府欢迎来自亚洲各地的贵客们、朋友们。

亚洲是世界上最大的洲，拥有世界60%的人口。它资源丰富，历史悠久，文化灿烂。上个世纪中，亚洲的巨变和崛起，谱写了亚洲发展的新篇章。[3]

中国是亚洲的一员。20年来，中国的改革开放政策带来了经济的飞速发展。[4] 加入世界贸易组织，是中国对外开放的新起点。[5] 我们将降低关税，在更多领域参与全球经济合作和竞争。中国将进一步向亚洲和世界开放。中国的改革开放和现代化建设事业，不仅将给中国人民带来无穷裨益，而且必将提供无限商机，促进亚洲和全世界的经济合作。

如同所有亚洲人民，中国人民勤劳智慧，自强不息。[6] 我们热爱和平，我们的发展需要和平。中国人民愿与亚洲各国人民一道，携手共创新世纪亚洲的美好未来。

谢谢！

V. USEFUL SENTENCES AND EXPRESSIONS

1. In 1972, Chairman Mao Zedong met with President Nixon at Zhongnanhai.
2. Chairman Deng Xiaoping visited the USA in January 1979 and met with President Carter there.
3. Chairman Deng Xiaoping met with Vice President George Bush on May 5, 1982.
4. President Clinton paid a formal visit to China at the request of Chairman Jiang Zemin in June, 1998.
5. Chairman Jiang Zemin met with President Bush, who attended the APEC meeting in Shanghai in October 2001.
6. Chairman Jiang Zemin had talks with President Bush in Beijing on February 21st, 2002.
7. Chinese Vice President Hu Jintao arrived in Washington for an official visit on April 30, 2002. During the meetings with US President George W. Bush, Vice President Dick Cheney and other top Bush administration officials, the Chinese Vice President exchanged views with them on issues of common concern, such as Taiwan, bilateral relations, and China's role in the WTO.
8. Swiss voters approved joining the United Nations on March 3rd, finding the prospect of a greater role in today's interlinked world.
9. The sudden deterioration in the Middle East has aroused general concern throughout the world.
10. On April 12, 2002, the first annual conference of the Boao Forum for Asia opened in Hainan with the theme of New Century, New Challenge, A New Asia: Economic Cooperation and Development.

NOTES

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

1. To that end we should study how to get along with China, the most populous country in the world. 因此，我们需要研究如何同中国，这个在世界上拥有最多人口的国家交往。
   (1) end 也可解释为"目的"。如：
   The end justifies/sanctifies the means. 只要目的正当，可以不择手段。
   (2) end 也可解释为"终点，末端"。如：
   It was the end of a dream. 美梦告终。
   (3) end 还可解释为"尽头"。如：
   Room 121 is at the end of the corridor. 121 室在走廊的尽头。
   (4) end 还意为"(时间的)最后时刻"。如：
   In the end, I could not bear it. 最后我无法忍受了。
2. Based on my recent trip to China, it may also become the most powerful country in the world during your lifetime. 根据我最近到中国旅行的经历，我认为中国有可能在你们有生之年，成为世界上最强大的国家。
   (1) powerful 意为"强有力的"。如：
   The headmaster is a powerful man. 校长是个强有力的人物。
   (2) powerful 也可解释为"巨大的"。如：
   The storm did a powerful lot of harm. 这场风暴造成了巨大的灾害。
   (3) powerful 还可解释为"强的，强烈的"。如：
   Onions have a powerful smell. 洋葱有强烈的味道。
3. China has a booming free market economy. 中国有一个蓬勃的自

由市场经济。

(1) booming 意为"蓬勃的，兴旺发展的"。如：

In a city with booming industry, land is precious and cannot be extravagantly used for traffic. 在一个工业飞速发展的城市里，土地资源非常宝贵，不能任意地用于交通。

Business is booming. 生意兴隆。

(2) booming 还可解释为"发轰隆声的"。如：

We all heard the booming waves. 我们都听见了澎湃的波涛声。

4. I was very impressed by the energy of the Chinese people, their work ethic, their pride in their country and culture, their practicality, and the rapid development of the Chinese economy. 中国人民旺盛的精力、对工作的认真态度、对自己国家和文化的自豪、务实的精神和快速增长的经济，给我留下深刻的印象。

(1) impress 意为"印入脑海，留下印象"。如：

He tries to impress the value of money on the students. 他试图让学生对钱的价值有个印象。

(2) impress 也可解释为"使感动，强烈地且经常是有利地影响"。如：

I am impressed by the child's sincerity. 我被那孩子的诚挚所感动。

(3) impress 还可解释为"用力盖印或好像用力地印或盖邮戳"。如：

She impressed a design on the hot wax. 她在热蜡上印了一个图案。

5. Besides study, stamps, acquaintanceship and travel, there lies still another way to learn about China. 除了学习、收集邮票、和中国人交朋友和到中国旅行，还有一个办法认识中国。

(1) lie 意为"存在，内含"。如：

The solution lies in research. 答案在研究中。

(2) lie 也可解释为"躺，平卧"。如：

I lay under a tree to sleep. 我躺在树下睡觉。

(3) lie 还可解释为"被放在一个水平面上或被一个水平面支撑

着"。如：

Dirty dishes lay on the table. 脏碟子摆在桌子上。

(4) lie 还可解释为"处于……状态，处于一种特定的状况"。如：

The dust has lain undisturbed for years. 尘土积在那儿很多年了。

6. I think that tolerance of diversity will be the key to the survival of the United States in the 21st century. 我认为承认多样化是美国在 21 世纪生存的关键。

(1) tolerance 是 tolerate 的名词形式，意为"宽容，忍耐力"。如：

My tolerance of noise is limited. 我对噪音的忍耐力是有限的。

(2) toleration 也是 tolerate 的名词，意为"容许，忍受"。如：

Toleration is the greatest gift of the mind. 宽容是思想中最伟大的礼物。

(3) tolerate 作动词，意为"容忍，忍受"。如：

I can't tolerate your bad manners any longer. 我再也不能容忍你无礼的行为。

Passage 2

1. I'm so grateful for the hospitality and honored for the reception at your great university. 非常感谢各位对我热情的接待，很荣幸能够来到这所伟大的学府。

(1) honor 意为"给予……荣誉"。如：

He has honored us with his presence. 他的到来是我们的光荣。

(2) honor 也可解释为"敬重，尊敬"。如：

He was honored for his courage in the battle. 他因在战斗中的英勇表现而受到尊敬。

2. Thirty years ago this week an American president arrived in China on a trip to end decades of estrangement and centuries of suspicion. 30 年前的这一周，一位美国总统来到了中国，他的中国之行是为了结束两国长达数十年的隔阂和数百年的相互猜疑。

(1) estrangement 是 estrange 的名词，意为"疏远"。如：

I cannot bear his estrangement from me. 我无法忍受他对我的疏远。

（2）estrange 作动词，意为“疏远”，后跟 from。如：

His behavior estranged him from his brother. 他的行为使他跟哥哥疏远了。

（3）estrange 还可解释为“隔离，远离”。如：

The SARS infector was estranged from the public immediately. SARS 患者立刻被隔离起来。

3. President Richard Nixon showed the world that two vastly different governments could meet on the grounds of common interest in the spirit of mutual respect. 尼克松总统向世界表明了两个有着重大差异的国家，本着互惠互利、相互尊重的精神是能够站在一起的。

（1）on the grounds of 意为“以……为理由，根据”。如：

Friendship has been established between the two countries on the grounds of mutual respect. 两国本着相互尊重的精神缔结了友好关系。

（2）ground 还解释为“地，地面”。如：

The enemy plane fell to the ground. 敌机坠地。

4. All these changes will lead to a stronger, more confident China, a China that can astonish and enrich the world, a China that your generation will help create. 所有的这些变化，将使得中国更加强大、更有自信。这个中国将震撼世界，也使世界更加丰富。这个中国就是你们这一代帮助建设起来的中国。

（1）enrich 来自于“en” + “rich”，意为“丰富，使更有意义或更有益处”。如：

An appreciation of art will enrich your life. 艺术欣赏将会丰富你的生活。

（2）enrich 也可解释为“使富裕”。如：

The discovery of gold in the valleys will enrich the poor mountain area. 山谷里发现了黄金将会使这个贫穷的山区富起来。

（3）enrich 还可解释为“给……添加营养物质”。如：

The dairy enriched its milk with vitamin D. 乳制品商在其牛奶中添加维生素 D 以强化其营养成分。

Passage 3

1. Just now, the reporter mentioned that there still remains some feeling of resentment between Japan and China over the problem of history. 刚才，这位记者提到中日两国在历史问题上依然存在着一些怨恨的情绪。

   resentment 意为“愤怒，憎恨”。如：

   Resentment edged his reply. 愤恨使他的回答非常尖锐。

2. Only by correctly understanding and handling the historical problems can we open up a new future for the Sino-Japanese relations. 只有正确地认识，正确地对待历史问题，才能够更好地开辟中日关系的未来。

   (1) handle 意为“对待”。如：

   Handle children kindly, if you want them to trust you. 假如你要孩子们信任你，就要对他们和气些。

   (2) handle 也可解释为“处理，应付，控制”。如：

   Ms Hawkins handles the company's accounts. 霍金斯女士管理公司的账目。

   She handled a difficult argument skilfully. 她巧妙地应付了一场艰难的辩论。

3. In my view, in order to promote continued growth of the Sion-Japanese relations, the most important task for our two countries is to take follow-up actions. 我想，为了推进中日关系的不断发展，对我们两国来讲最重要的就是采取后续行动。

   (1) promote 意为“促进，推动”。如：

   The teacher promoted students' love of learning. 老师推动了学生们学习的热情。

   (2) promote 也可解释为“倡议”。如：

   The President promoted a constitutional amendment. 总统倡议了宪法修正案。

   (3) promote 还可解释为“提升，擢升”(常与 to 连用)。如：

The young army officer was promoted (to the rank of) captain. 那个年轻的陆军军官已被提升为上尉。

4. That means the two sides must fully carry out the various agreements set during the period of President Jiang's trip to Japan, such as the cross-century exchange program between the Chinese and Japanese youngsters and the bilateral cooperation in high-tech industries. 也就是说，双方必须充分落实江泽民主席访日期间所达成的各项协议，比如说，中日跨世纪的青少年交流计划，还有中日双方关于高科技产业的合作等等。

(1) various 意为"各种各样的"。如：

There are various colors to choose from. 有各种各样的颜色可供选择。

I know various ways of cooking an egg. 我知道各种各样烧鸡蛋的方法。

(2) varied 则强调"变化多样的"。如：

The work of JP is interesting and varied. 治安官的工作有趣而内容多变。

PART B

1. "各位嘉宾"

称谓前的形容词，我们常用"Respected/Respectable/Honourable"，意为"尊敬的"。除此之外，"Distinguished"也常用于修饰称谓。如：

Respectable Your Majesty：尊敬的陛下；

Distinguished guests：各位贵宾；

Your Excellency/Honour：阁下；

His/Her Excellency/Honour：阁下他/她……(第三人称)；

Your Majesty/Highness：陛下/殿下；

His/Her Majesty/Highness：陛下/殿下他/她……(第三人称)。如：

Her Majesty Queen Margaret the Second：玛格丽特二世女王陛下，她……

2. "我很高兴参加这次'中国日'年会。"

关于"我很高兴"的译法，前文已经提到过。"……年会/研讨会/大型会议"译为 annual meeting/symposium/conference on ...。全句如下：It gives me great pleasure to attend this annual meeting on China Day.

3. "亚洲是世界上最大的洲，拥有世界60%的人口。它资源丰富，历史悠久，文化灿烂。上个世纪中，亚洲的巨变和崛起，谱写了亚洲发展的新篇章。"

   这个句子较为复杂，我们在口译时不一定将它合并成一个句子，这样容易产生语法错误，增加翻译难度，可将其分成3个句子。同时注意确定每个句子的 SV 主干：(1)亚洲拥有世界60%的人口。(2)它(有)丰富资源，悠久历史，灿烂文化。(3)亚洲谱写了新篇章。全句译文如下：

   As the biggest continent on the earth, Asia takes up 60% of its population. It has rich resources, a long history and brilliant culture. With its profound changes and rise in the last century, Asia wrote a glorious chapter of development.

4. "20年来，中国的改革开放政策带来了经济的飞速发展。"

   处理这个句子时，将"中国取得经济的飞速发展"定为主、谓、宾。全句译为：Over the past two decades, China has achieved rapid economic growth thanks to its reform and opening-up policy.

   句中的 thanks to ... 理解为"得益于……"。如：

   Thanks to its geographical position, Hong Kong has become a harbor city. 香港的地理位置使它成为一个港口城市。

5. "加入世界贸易组织，是中国对外开放的新起点。"

   "加入世界贸易组织"不一定要用动词词组来翻译，我们可以采用名词词组"entry to ..."。句子译文为：

   China's entry to WTO represents the new starting point for its opening to the outside world.

6. "如同所有亚洲人民，中国人民勤劳智慧，自强不息。"

   要译好这个句子，要注意一些词组的译法。"勤劳智慧，自强不息"都可以用形容词来诠释。句子译为：

   Like all the people in Asia, the Chinese people are diligent, talented and persistent in self-development.

REFERENCE VERSION

WARMING-UP PRACTICE

1. **中美关系**

简：我们知道，虽然中美之间的关系有很大程度的改善，但是两国之间仍然存在着诸多分歧，新的问题也不断产生。你如何看待两国关系的前景呢？

张：我认为，台湾问题始终是中美关系中一个最重要、最敏感、最值得注意的问题。如果双方能恪守一些重要原则，比如说，相互尊重领土完整和主权，平等互利，中美关系就能稳定地发展。

2. **中日关系**

杰克：你认为中国应当怎样发展长期的中日关系呢？

王：　你知道，在中日两国总理互访后，江泽民主席于 1999 年访问了日本。这是中国的国家主席首次访问日本。中日作为两个大国，一衣带水。两国过去有着长久的文化友好交往，有着相同的文化渊源，但是也有过近代不幸的历史。所以，中日发展友好关系，一定要以史为鉴。

3. **中国和欧盟的关系**

罗伯特：在欧洲居住着近 100 万华侨、华人，他们都非常关心中国同欧盟的关系。你怎么看待这一点呢？

李：　　中国同欧盟和其他欧洲国家是互利合作的重要贸易伙伴。更重要的是，在国际事务中，中国和欧盟，中国和欧洲许多国家，有着共同的想法和主张。我们同欧盟的关系发展得很好，和欧洲各国的关系同样发展得很好。我相信，未来是光明的。

PASSAGE INTERPRETATION

PART A

Passage 1

孩子们：

我非常高兴能和大家在这儿谈谈。你们也许从电影、书本或从父母、邻居和朋友那儿了解了中国的某些事情，但还不够。今天我的发言就是为了鼓励在座所有人多学习有关中国的知识。

原因在于我们现在是生活在一个越来越国际化的世界里。9·11悲剧告诉我们，辽阔的海洋再也不足以保护我们免受敌人的攻击。我们需要国外的朋友，越多越好。因此，我们需要研究如何同中国，这个在世界上拥有最多人口的国家交往。根据我最近到中国旅行的经历，我认为中国有可能在你们有生之年，成为世界上最强大的国家。中国有近13亿人口，是我们人口的5倍。这也是，不管你们喜不喜欢，都要学会和中国打交道的另一个原因。

要了解一个国家有很多途径，最起码，我鼓励你们要特别关注中国的历史、地理、政治和经济体制、生态、民俗、建筑、宗教组织及信仰。

收集一个国家的邮票，是了解这个国家的一个办法。邮票会让你知道许多这个国家正在发生的事情。我也鼓励你们多认识身在美国的中国人，或者如果有机会，到中国去旅行，亲身体验那里的一切。

那里发生的一切可以用一个词来形容——令人敬畏。中国有一个蓬勃的自由市场经济。虽然中国社会还不完美，但我们必须承认，没有一个社会是完美的。中国人民旺盛的精力、对工作的认真态度、对自己国家和文化的自豪、务实的精神和快速增长的经济，给我留下深刻的印象。

除了学习、收集邮票、和中国人交朋友和到中国旅行，还有一个办法认识中国，就是学习中文。这很难，但是却充满乐趣。

几天前，我问我的外孙女珍妮她想上什么样的大学时，她的回答是："提供多样化课程的大学"。我完全赞成她的选择。我认为承认多样化是美国在21世纪生存的关键。

今天我所阐述的一切是对9·11悲剧以后世界的一种探索。不要

把这次交谈看做是我对你们的要求，它是我在中国，一个我曾经以为我自己永远都不会有机会去拜访的国家，度过3个星期后的一些感想。

谢谢！

Passage 2

尊敬的校长，

老师们，同学们：

非常感谢各位对我热情的接待，很荣幸能够来到这所伟大的学府。感谢你们接待我和我们整个一行。

我的来访恰逢一个重要的周年纪念日。30年前的这一周，一位美国总统来到了中国，他的中国之行是为了结束两国长达数十年的隔阂和数百年的相互猜疑。尼克松总统向世界表明了两个有着重大差异的国家，本着互惠互利、相互尊重的精神是能够站在一起的。他与中国的握手越过了世界上最为辽阔的海洋。

我上次来访中国是在1975年。从那时以来，贵国发生了巨变。中国在开放、在企业、在经济自由方面都取得了惊人的成就。这种成就显示了中国有着巨大的潜能。

30年来，美中两国已多次握过友谊之手和商业之手。如今，我们两国间的接触增加了，两国的国民也逐渐加深了对彼此的了解。

所有的这些变化，将使得中国更加强大、更有自信。这个中国将震撼世界，也使世界更加丰富。这个中国就是你们这一代将帮助建设起来的中国。

再过6年，来自美国和世界其他地方的运动员将到贵国参加奥林匹克运动会。我相信，他们将会见到一个正在变成大国的中国，一个走在世界前沿的国家，一个民心安定，与世界和平相处的中国！

非常感谢！

Passage 3

刚才，这位记者提到中日两国在历史问题上依然存在着一些怨恨的情绪。因此，我想就此谈谈我的看法。

1999年是中日两国缔结和平友好条约的20周年，江泽民主席应邀对日本进行了国事访问。这次访问是非常成功的。两国领导人在东

京进行了一系列会谈、会晤，就历史问题，包括如何正确认识对待历史问题在内，非常坦诚深入地交换了意见。他们还就今后跨世纪的中日关系的发展方向达成了一致。中日双方都同意未来的中日关系应当是和平与发展的友好合作伙伴关系。在历史问题上，双方都同意一个原则，这就是“以史为鉴，面向未来”。只有正确地认识，正确地对待历史问题，才能够更好地开辟中日关系的未来。这是双方所达成的一个很重要的共识。

我想，为了推进中日关系的不断发展，对我们两国来讲最重要的就是采取后续行动。也就是说，双方必须充分落实江泽民主席访日期间所达成的各项协议，比如说，中日跨世纪的青少年交流计划，还有中日双方关于高科技产业的合作等等。这种种行动将使得中日友好合作关系不断健康稳定地向前发展。

PART B

Distinguished guests,

Ladies and gentlemen,

It gives me great pleasure to attend this annual meeting on China Day. I'd like, on behalf of the Chinese government, to welcome all the guests and friends from every part of Asia.

As the biggest continent on the earth, Asia takes up 60% of its population. It has rich resources, a long history and brilliant culture. With its profound changes and rise in the last century, Asia wrote a glorious chapter of development.

China is an Asian country. Over the past two decades, China has achieved rapid economic growth thanks to its reform and opening-up policy. China's entry to WTO represents the new starting point for its opening to the outside world. We will lower our tariffs and participate in worldwide economic cooperation and competition in more areas. China will open its door still wider to the rest of Asia and the world. China's reform, opening up and modernization cause will not only bring great benefits to the Chinese people, but also offer many business opportunities and promote economic cooperation in Asia and around the world.

Like all the people in Asia, the Chinese people are diligent, talented and persistent in self-development. We love peace and China's development needs peace. The Chinese people are ready to work hand in hand with people in other Asian countries to build a better future for Asia.

Thank you!